Advertiſement

About the *ENGLISH ATLAS* now Printing at the *Theatre* in *Oxford* by *Moſes Pitt* Bookſeller in *London.*

THat the *Firſt Volum of the ſaid* ATLAS, *which contains the North Pole, the principal Countries of which are,* Muſcovy *or* Ruſſia, Poland, Sweden, *and* Denmark; *will be finiſhed, and ready to be delivered to the Subſcribers about* Chriſtmaſs *next: And therefore it is deſired, that thoſe that have Subſcribed and not Paid their Money, as alſo others that deſre to Subſcribe, do immediately pay their Subſcription Money,* viz. *Forty Shillings, to Dr.* Thomas Yate, *Principal of* Brazen Noſe *College* Oxon, *or to* Moſes Pitt *at the Angel in S.* Paul's *Churchyard* London; *where they ſhall have a Receipt.*

And all thoſe that have a mind to have their Coat of Arms engraven on any of the Plates, ſhall have it done for Twenty Shillings if they pleaſe to ſend their Coat to either of the two Perſons above mentioned in time.

If any deſire to ſatisfie themſelves as to the well-doing of the aid Book, let them inquire at the Theatre *in* Oxon, *or at the Shop of the ſaid* Moſes Pitt *in* London, *where they may be fully ſatisfied by ſeeing of the Sheets of the ſaid Book as they are wrought off at the Preſs.*

It's deſired, that if any Gentleman has any Curioſities of any Countrey whatſoever, if he pleaſe to communicate them to the ſaid Moſes Pitt, *and they are approved of and judg'd fit to be Printed by thoſe Learned men, whoſe Judgments are conſulted, they ſhall have Satisfaction for them to their own content.*

Advertiſement

About the *ENGLISH ATLAS* now Printing at the *Theatre* in *Oxford* by *Moſes Pitt* Bookſeller in *London.*

THat the *Firſt Volum of the ſaid* ATLAS, *which contains the North Pole, the principal Countries of which are,* Muſcovy *or* Ruſſia, Poland, Sweden, *and* Denmark; *will be finiſhed, and ready to be delivered to the Subſcribers about* Chriſtmaſs *next: And therefore it is deſired, that thoſe that have Subſcribed and not Paid their Money, as alſo others that deſre to Subſcribe, do immediately pay their Subſcription Money,* viz. *Forty Shillings, to Dr.* Thomas Yate, *Principal of* Brazen Noſe *College* Oxon, *or to* Moſes Pitt *at the Angel in S.* Paul's *Churchyard* London; *where they ſhall have a Receipt.*

And all thoſe that have a mind to have their Coat of Arms engraven on any of the Plates, ſhall have it done for Twenty Shillings if they pleaſe to ſend their Coat to either of the two Perſons above mentioned in time.

If any deſire to ſatisfie themſelves as to the well-doing of the aid Book, let them inquire at the Theatre *in* Oxon, *or at the Shop of the ſaid* Moſes Pitt *in* London, *where they may be fully ſatisfied by ſeeing of the Sheets of the ſaid Book as they are wrought off at the Preſs.*

It's deſired, that if any Gentleman has any Curioſities of any Countrey whatſoever, if he pleaſe to communicate them to the ſaid Moſes Pitt, *and they are approved of and judg'd fit to be Printed by thoſe Learned men, whoſe Judgments are conſulted, they ſhall have Satisfaction for them to their own content.*

A

COLLECTION

OF SEVERAL

Relations & Treatiſes

Singular and Curious,

OF

JOHN BAPTISTA TAVERNIER,
Baron of Aubonne.

Not Printed among his firſt Six Voyages.

Divided into Five Parts, viz.

I. A new and ſingular Relation of the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, with ſeveral Figures, and a Map of the Countrey.

II. How the *Hollanders* manage their Affairs in *Aſia*.

III. A Relation of *Japon*, and the Cauſe of the Perſecution of the Chriſtians in thoſe Iſlands; with a Map of the Countrey.

IV. A Relation of what paſſed in the Negotiation of the Deputies which were at *Perſia* and the *Indies*, as well on the *French* King's as the Company's behalf, for the Eſtabliſhment of Trade.

V. Obſervations upon the *Eaſt India* Trade, and the Frauds there ſubject to be committed.

Publiſhed by EDMUND EVERARD, *Eſquire.*

IMPRIMATUR hic Liber, cui Titulus, A Collection of ſeveral Relations and Treatiſes, &c.

Anth. Spinedge, Rev. in Chriſto Patri & Dom. Domino Gulielmo Archiep. Cant. à Sacris Domeſticis.

LONDON,
Printed by *A. Godbid* and *J. Playford*, for *Moſes Pitt* at the Angel in S. *Paul's* Churchyard. 1680.

TO THE

RIGHT HONOURABLE

Sir Robert Clayton,

LORD MAYOR ELECT

OF THE

CITY of LONDON.

My Lord,

THE Encouragement the City-Trade and Forein Diſcoveries is like to find under Your Lordſhip's Magiſtracy, ought to be the chief Encouragement of any Publick-ſpirited Perſon to render unto You all due Acknowledgments and Teſtimonies of Honour in this kind. The City of *LONDON* is doubtleſs the Head and Promotreſs of all *Engliſh* Trade,

and Your Lordſhip is the deſigned Head and Repreſentative of the City: That Obligation Forein Traffique hath to *London*, *London* oweth partly to the wiſe Councils and Government of its Chief Magiſtrate, and it ſcarce ever had any, of whoſe Prudence Courage, and Moderation, it ought to conceive greater hopes than of Your Lordſhip's. Hard Weather needs Reſolute Pilots, and Good Magiſtrates are ordinarily ſent by God againſt bad Times: And far be it from us that we ſhould make Times worſe than they are. But as it hath been my bad more than my good Fortune to be ſome years ago the firſt *Avant* Courier, who from the Enemies Camp brought the Tidings of theſe Helliſh Attempts, that now cauſe our Domeſtic Troubles; ſo I in this Book preſent to Your Lordſhip, and all *England*, an unavoidable and impartial Argument, to ſhew that our Fears from Jeſuitical Practices are much leſs magnified, than they are by them beyond meaſure extenuated, by a new Popiſh Device of Creating Security: For herein Your Lordſhip may ſee what the Jeſuits are, where ever they get Footing and Credit, in the furtheſt part of *Japon*, as well as in *Venice*, *Paris*, *Ireland*, and *England*.

Cœlum non Animum mutant, cùm trans mare currunt.

You ſhall obſerve (I ſay) how theſe *Ignatians* Covetouſneſs and State-undermining, brought

brought the greateſt Rebellion, Bloudſhed, and Maſſacre upon about 60000 Chriſtians at one blow, that ever was ſeen in thoſe Eaſtern Parts of the World; and how thereby ſome Hundred Thouſands in after Perſecutions were deſtroyed; nay, and the whole Chriſtian Name quite extirpated (in hatred of their Practices) by Heathen Monarchs, who could not think their Heads, Crowns, nor Eſtates, to be otherwiſe ſafe from the Factious Diſciples of this *Loyola*. Yet all their, and their ſecret Factors Devices, will (I hope) come to nought, if we follow thoſe moderate, peaceable, and judicious Counſels, Your Lordſhip's Eloquent Speech hath ſet out unto us; begetting a ſober and hearty Harmony 'twixt Prince and People. If the Ship be kept in good order within, there's little to be fear'd from Storms without. I remark, That it depended much on the *Tribunus Plebis*, or Lord Mayor of the old *Rome*, (moſt like to our *London* in Policy and Magiſtracy) to keep it and the whole Government in an even temper, and to maintain a Lovely Correſpondency betwixt the Senat and the People; and it was by him that the Enemies or Friends of the Commonwealth ordinarily wrought their ends of Peace or Diſturbance. Therefore as Your Lordſhip hath always appeared, as well in your Actions as in your Words, a Sincere and Brave-ſpirited Patriot, a Moderate and Reconciling Subject, it is not to be doubted

doubted but that Your Lordſhip will give that Satisfaction to the Court, City, and Country, and even to all Forein Traffiquers themſelves, that is juſtly expected and conceived of you. So that Quiet, Peace, Trade, and Forein Diſcoveries, being encouraged and promoted in your Times, your Name ſhall be not onely reſpected and honoured among your Countreymen, but alſo in thoſe remoteſt parts of the World, where this ſmall Work (moſt neceſſary for all *Eaſt India* Merchants and Travellers) will ſound it out, and teſtifie with all the due Reſpects and Obligations on the Public Accompt of,

Your moſt Humble and

Dutiful Servant,

EDMUND EVERARD.

THE PREFACE.

THE *World being an ample Volum, in whoſe Extent and Varieties the Framer's Wiſdom and Attributes are manifeſtly read and ſet out, it ſeems that great Travellers are the beſt Scholars and Proficients in this Book; ſince on's Native Countrey is but as a ſingle Leaf, where all the Singularities are not to be ſeen which are found in the other.*

---- Non omnis fert omnia Tellus.

And the truth of it is, thoſe Ancient Philoſophers, who have firſt laid the Foundations of Arts, Sciences, and Commonwealths in the World, were Travellers into theſe very Eaſtern Parts, (partly deſcribed by us here) whence they brought home all their Knowledge; it being here that Man and Knowledge it ſelf had their firſt beginning. So that wiſe Travellers are not un-

like those rich laden Vessels which through many dangers bring wholesom and profitable Cargo's, Drugs, *and other Conveniences, to be dispers'd among the several Societies of their own Countrey: They are like those diligent Master-Bees, who run divers miles to extract out of many bitter Herbs that sweet Liquor, which they afterwards kindly refund to be enjoyed at home in common, in the hardest Seasons of the Year, by their Fellows. What costs them dear, others have it cheap: And there's scarce any Private Persons in the Commonwealth, to whom we owe greater Honour and Thanks, than to Worthy Travellers and Discoverers of Remote Countries.*

Yet it may be truly said, That Ancient Travellers and Geographers have but as coarse Lanners and Coast-Drivers, drawn a very rough Draught in their Relations of those Countries they describ'd unto us, in comparison of some later Writers, who also sometimes do but copy their Predecessors Stories; and Merchants, with most other Travellers, are weather-driven by their private Occasions or Misfortunes, to take but a Cursory Survey of Places, and so give but an answerable account of the same to the World.

But among all the Ancient and Modern Travellers, none had such fair Opportunities and Advantages as the Illustrious Monsieur Tavernier *had, to make a true, profitable, and exact Relation of the Singularities of those Remote Parts of* Asia, *where he past so many*

Years

Years in great Splendour, as ſhall appear by the enſuing Conſiderations and Qualifications of a good Traveller.

1. *He from his Youth had a ſtrong Inclination to Travel, which ſecret Inſtinct is certainly a Preordination of God for an Undertaking; and this unſeen Impulſion carries ſuch extraordinary Inſtruments chearfully and proſperouſly through all the Difficulties, others of a contrary diſpoſition would never wade thorough, for whom it would be in vain to ſtrive againſt the current of Nature.*

2. *This Travelling* Genius *made him begin early to fit himſelf for his deſign, and ſoon to go about it. He was therefore ſufficiently imbued in his Intellectuals with all due knowledge of Sciences, Language, and Geography, and precedent Travellers Maps and Books, without all which common Travellers cannot conceive ſo ſoon and ſo orderly, nor reap ſo much benefit for themſelves or others.*

3. *But Speculations without Experience are but unprofitable Notions; and the Experiments of this kind are not to be had without* great Means and Expence, *for want of which many a good Undertaking is Still-born.*

Haud facilè emergunt, quorum virtutibus obſtat
Res anguſta domi——

is an old and true Saying. But our noble **Tavernier** *had an ample Eſtate, drove a great Trade, had Money in abundance, and a Prince's or Embaſſador-like Retinue, without which and great Preſents none is ſcarce look'd upon in Luxurious* **Aſia**, *fit for admittance into great and worthy Companies, where Knowledge may be attained; ſo that he thereby ſoon got into the Preſence, Familiarity, and Cloſets of the Emperours, the Miniſters of State, and the Philoſophers of* **Perſia**, **Mogol**, *&c. and got into the Acquaintance and Converſations of the leading and common Merchants, Traffiquers, and People; and knew their Languages very well: for it is in vain to have Eyes, if one have not alſo a Tongue in ſuch caſes.*

4. *And whereas Learning and Riches do ſometimes render narrow Souls of a more proud and unſociable temper, Monſieur* **Tavernier** *is by Nature and Education, an obliging, cheerful, and inſinuating Traveller, and of a graceful Countenance. Comely Perſonages are beloved almoſt as ſoon as they are ſeen; and thoſe that have but fair Souls, are not ſo till after they are known. Now Monſieur* **Tavernier** *having both theſe Advantages, had a free entrance into the Friendſhip and Notions the* **Indians** (*great or ſmall*) *had concerning the Natural, Mechanical, Political, Religious, and Trading State of their own Countrey; which he made more his buſineſs to know, than to grow more rich.*

And

And at ſome times he would reckon Thouſands of Pounds as nothing to attain his ends in this point of Knowledge *and further* Experience; *as the peruſal of this his own Work, and Perſons now in* London, *that knew him in and after his Travels, can fully teſtifie.*

5. *Moreover, Mutual Help of Perſons equally underſtanding and curious, is a great advantage in ſuch Reſearches and Obſervations as theſe.* Now John Baptiſta Tavernier, *beſides many other Heads and Hands, had herein the Aſſiſtance of a Brother, as complete a Traveller as himſelf in thoſe furtheſt Parts of* Aſia, *and had no leſs the foregoing Qualifications in Perſon and Eſtate than this his Brother* John Baptiſta *had, as the Reader may well perceive by this Volum of Travels.*

6. *And as for the* Time; *Six Voyages, and about Forty Years Abode in thoſe Countries they do deſcribe, did render theſe Brethrens Knowledge vaſt, their Experiments tried over and over, and this their Account more ſure and exact (as I ſaid) than that of any other Traveller heretofore.*

7. *And finally, to confirm the undoubted Credit that's to be given to this Nobleman and his Relation, (who is above all deſign of Flattering or Deceiving the Reader) you may meet with ſeveral Worthy Perſons in this City and the Court of* England; *and I my ſelf, who was at* Paris *ſome few years ago at Monſieur*

Tavernier's *Arrival, and who can witneſs the grand Eſteem, the ſolemn Honours and Thanks, that were then given him by Perſons of all Ranks and Degrees, the* French Eaſt India *Company's Admiration and Recommendation of him, that he had done his King and Countrey more Credit in thoſe proud Eaſtern Courts than ever any did before him; the* French *King's imploying of him there; the Rarities he brought home to the Learned; the vaſt Riches and Memoirs he gained for himſelf, and the incomparable Jewels and Singularities he brought to the* French *King; the Titles of* Lord *and* Baron *conferred upon him extraordinarily, though he were a Merchant and a ſtrict Proteſtant. Theſe (I ſay) Public and Private Teſtimonials do ſhew what Credit other Nations and his own (which is Singular) had given to him. But in a word his own Obſervations herein gathered will prove it better.*

But if any deſire to have ſome Account of the Work it ſelf, the Newneſs, Profit, and Satisfaction the very Subject muſt needs yield to all Perſons and Profeſſions cannot but be acceptable.

The Naturaliſt ſhall have Plants, Minerals, Animals, and Phœnomena's *never ſeen in our Climate. And about Phyſic, the Law, Muſic, and Poetry, more*

Time

Time and Tryals are required in thoſe Countries than here; and you ſhall accordingly read of Cures done that draw near to natural Miracles.

The Divine will ſee things worth his Obſervation in their Religion and Morals, wherein they may confound the very Chriſtians; whereof I'le onely touch but thus much: That by the Light of Nature thoſe Heathens own a Supreme Deity, and a Future State of Happineſs and Torments; and do in view of the ſame moſt ſtrictly keep the Civil and the Ten Moral Commandments, much anſwerable to ours, which their Prophets have left to them. So that they puniſh Murther and Adultery even in Princes and Princeſſes; terrible Examples whereof you may here read at large. And the Church and State Government are ſubſervient in a Subordination, the one being a Prop to the other.*

*Tunquin ch. 7. p. 18.

Even Stateſmen may find Subject of weighty conſideration, in the Antiquity, Model, and Exactneſs of their Government. As for inſtance: Though they have a ſpecial regard to Monarchy, ſo as to keep the Succeſſion within the ſame Line; yet the Great Conſtable, and the King's Council have Power left them to propoſe and chuſe the fitteſt Perſon among the Royal Children, or Collateral Succeſſors, who is nominated in the King's Life-time, to prevent after Diſturbances. They have alſo*

*Tunquin c. 11. p. 35.

alſo on the other ſide very ſingular and unimitable ways to prevent the Inſurrections, Diviſions, and Rebellions of the Militia *and the People.*

But above all, the Traveller and Traffiquer into thoſe Parts will be like to run into a thouſand Inconveniences, and Loſſes of Health, Life, and Eſtate, without being guided by ſuch Directions as he carefully gives herein, which others cannot poſſibly ſo ſoon and ſo well know.

It is in fine herein declared, by what means the French, Holland, *and* Portugal Eaſt India *Companies were Settled, Improved, and Worſted in thoſe Countries; alſo the Coinage, and the Reduction thereof to ours; the particular places where all ſorts of* Eaſt India *Commodities are beſt and cheapeſt had; the Rates and Exchange Returns are here to be found; the manner how to know their Falſifications in Gold, Silver, Jewels, Drugs, Silks, Linen, and all the other Merchandizes which are brought from thoſe Nations are here ſet down: It being otherwiſe hard or impoſſible to eſcape the Cheats of the* Perſians, Chineſes, *and* Japoners, *without ſuch Inſtructions.*

I'le ſay no more, but that in this Work was imployed the Help of another Worthy Gentleman, who labour'd

in

in the first Volum of Tavernier's *Translation; but it was brought to an end and perfection by me, who had the occasion to be more particularly acquainted with Monsieur* Tavernier *himself, his Native Tongue, and other Particularities abroad.*

Edmund Everard.

The TABLE to *Tavernier's* Volum of *Japon, China,* and *Tunquin, &c.*

A *Relation of* Japon, *and of the cauſe of the Perſecution of the* Chriſtians *in thoſe Iſlands.* pag. 1.

A Relation of what paſs'd in the Negotiation of the Deputies which were ſent to Perſia *and the* Indies, *as well on the behalf of the* French *King, as of the* French *Company, for the ſettling of Trade.* 26

Obſervations upon the Trade of the Eaſt Indies. 51

Of the Commodities which are brought as well out of the Dominions of the Great Mogul, *as out of the Kingdoms of* Golconda *and* Viſapour, *and other neighbouring Territories. And alſo of the Weights and Meaſures of the ſaid Commodities.* 57

Chap. 1. *A diſcourſe in general concerning the City of* Tunquin, *and of the manner how the Author came to have knowledge thereof.* 1

Chap. 2. *Of the Situation and Extent of the Kingdom of* Tunquin. 5

Chap. 3. *Of the Quality of the Kingdom of* Tunquin 7

Chap. 4. *Of the Riches, Trade, and Money of the Kingdom of* Tunquin. 13

Chap. 5. *Of the Strength of the Kingdom of* Tunquin *by Sea and Land* 14

Chap. 6. *Of the Manners and Cuſtoms of the People of the Kingdom of* Tunquin. 16

Chap. 7. *Of the Marriages of the* Tunquineſes, *and their Severity toward Adultereſſes.* 18

Chap. 8. *Of the Viſits, Feaſts, and Paſtimes of the* Tunquineſes. 21

Chap. 9. *Of the Learned Men in the Kingdom of* Tunquin. 24

Chap. 10. *Of their Phyſicians, and the Diſeaſes of the* Tunquineſes. 28

Chap. 11. *Of the original Government and Policy of the Kingdom of* Tunquin. 31

Chap. 12. *Of the Court of the King of* Tunquin. 38

Chap 13. *Of the Ceremonies obſerv'd when the Kings of* Tunquin *are advanced to the Throne.* 40

Chap. 14. *Of the Funeral Pomp of the Kings of* Tunquin, *and of their manners of burying their Dead.* 46

Chap. 15. *Of the Religion and Superſtition of the* Tunquineſes. 49

Of

Of the Government of the Hollanders *in* Aſia.

Chap. 1. *Of the Iſland of* Formoſa, *and how the* Hollanders *poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and how it was taken from them by the* Chineſes. 57
Chap. 2. *Of* Maurice *Iſland, where they cut Ebony.* 61
Chap. 3. *Of the Grandeur of the General at* Batavia, *and what befell his Wife and his Niece.* 65
Chap. 4. *Of General* Vanderbroug, *and of the Original of the City of* Batavia. 69
Chap. 5. *Of the Countrey about* Cochin, *and how the* Holland *General crown'd one of the* Indian *Princes.* 74
Chap. 6. *Of the Sieur* Hollebrand Glins, *Preſident of the Factory at* Ormus. 77
Chap. 7. *Touching the Iſlands of the Prince.* 79
Chap. 8. *How the* Hollanders *ſent to declare War againſt the* Perſians, *and of the ill ſucceſs of their Fleet.* 80
Chap. 9. *Of the Severity of the* Holland *Commanders in the* Indies. 83
Chap. 10. *Touching the Women.* 85

A MAPP OF T
IAP
ORIENTALL
MAPP of TUNQUIN
15 Leagues make a degree.
River of Cimpa.
The Coast of China unhabited
Lake of Cuadag
Bodego
Cuadag
Cieco
Kecou
Ketoy
Cimpa
The Ile of Chancon
the high Tower
Cuaci
Sansoo
Pulociampelio Ile
Colaure
Tulatan Ile
Haiso
Camelee
Ile of Tachan
Tachan
Dinphoan
Bonten
The Tortise Ilands
OQUI
THE COAST OF COCHINCHINA
THE SEA OF COREER
The Isles of COREER
IAMAI
SO IT
IETSEN
MIACO or MEACO
TOKOESI or XIKOKO Isle
XIKOKO
THE KINGDOME OF SAIKOCK
NANGISAQVI
Firando Cochite
Kisma
Ximo Saikock
Satcuma
Tanegaxima
Zimo
Vasumi
Bungo
Fumay
Bugen
Cokora
Iamman
Ganamisaqui
Simissima
Iobeco
Autua
Sincubi
Omodo Key
Nanast gamma
Zetta
Rocher
Gin Kay
Amessima
Coyssima
Sino Sima
Ximonaxoqui
Ganomi saqui
Yamanguelu
Firoxima
Suuo
Aqui
Tomo
Nangati
Iuami
Idzumo
Bingo
Bitchu
Mimalaca
Foqui
Yazuqui
Inaba
Tottori
Tauma
Tamba
Tango
Yamaxiro
Fuximi
Bigen
Tcvnocuni
Oquayama
Muro
Fairma
Akas
Sauoia
Stingo
Amnzana
Saqui
Achas
Oseaca
tower
Saccaiia
Cauachi
Idzumi
Yamato
Quinocuni
Cataixu
Xima
Yke
Yonda
Ingo
Sintsi
Samma
Quira noxo
Yechigen
Vacosa
Vbama
Vomi
Anzuqui
Sanuqui
Anai
Aua
Xio
Dongo
Toia
Margaani
Wata
Lesima
Auwa
Sauoia
Fisima
Cocsiat
Sace
Sakinosso
Yonda
Sinsi
Ioka
Iona
Ouanoa
Ormida
Iakuta
Isoma
Vouu
Ie
Ts
Ot
THE
170
171
172
173
174
175
176
177
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
169

THE ISLES OF
PON
L OCEAN
E SOUTH SEA
THE LAND OF IESSE
the Streights of Sangar
TSUNGAER
Aquita
NANBV
YONAZAVA
Aizu
XENDAI
Gold Mines
DEVA
VOXV
XIDAIBAMA
NIVATA
FITAQVI
Sataque
TONDO XIMA Isle
Silver Mines
Sando
NOTO
NAYMA
XIVA
Canga
FVCHV
VTCHV
YECHINGO
SUVA
AXICANGA
XIMOLV
AXIMOT
MVLAXI
IEDO or IENDO
Conzuque
Sinagawa
SANGANI
Cansula
AVA
MAICVIMA Isle
TOI Isle
YYNOXIMA Isle
BANDEL
DAVRA
Facour
Scabarca
Iusuwari
Camba
Okis
Iesare
SURUNGA
Mirico
Ocambe
Fonsfuda
Simanda
Karaye
KaKmKw R
Niborasaca
KAKINKAREN
Niborasaca
Tenri R
Sacca
Iaai
Arey
Swack
FLAGWAY
IOSINDA
Acosaqui
Finiscantina
OCASAQVI
Sirisu
MIA
OWAERI
Vouuri
MICAVA
TATOMI
XINAN
Mino
ETS EGEN
QUAN
T
O
H
O
R
5 10 15 20 25 30
The Leagues of Iapon are like the little Miles of France.
177 178 179 180 181 182 183 184 185
40 39 38 37 36 35 34 33 32

An Alphabetical *Index* to the Map of *Tunquin*, made on the place by *B. Tavernier*.

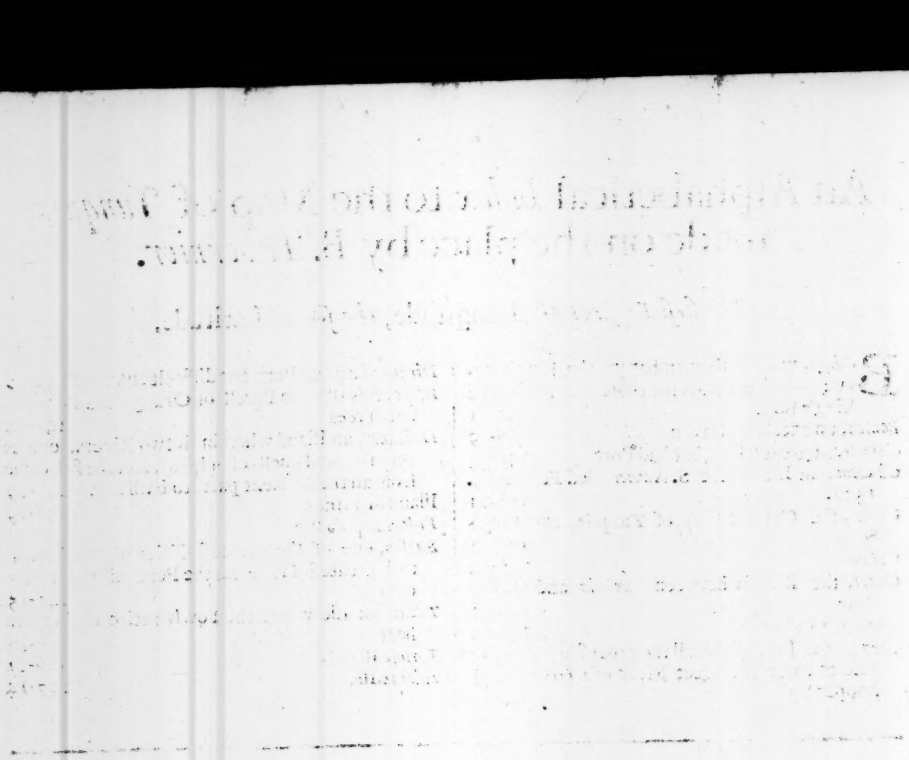
The first Figures are Longitude, *the second* Latitude.

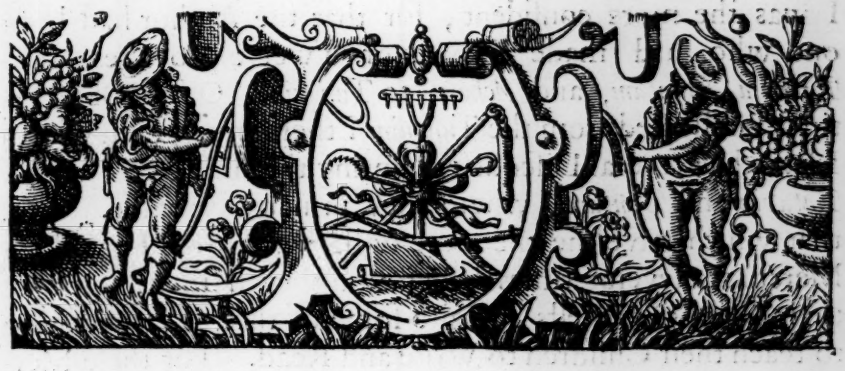
Bodego, whence they embarque the King's Body: as also the Huts for those that attend the King's Body 144-21
Bonten, an excellent Haven 151-9
Camelee, a great River, but bad Port 146-13
Chancon, an Isle where S. *Xavier* died *February* 4. 1552. 155-21
Checo, the Capital City of *Tunquin*, and King's Seat 144-21
Colaure 146-14
Cuaci, the Bounds between *Tunquin* and *Cochinchina* 142-16
Cuadag, a Lake 140-22
Cuadig, the Port where all the great Ships lie, not able to enter the great River of *Checbe*, being stopped up 142-20
Dinphoan, a good Port, but difficult entrance 149-10
Haifo, this Isle is a Forest of Orange and Pomgranat Trees 145-14
Hainanen, an Island wherein is two Rivers, one is very hot and smells of Sulphur, and the sick come from all the adjacent parts to bath in it 148-19
Island of Fishes 146-19
Pulociampelio Isle 146-15
Sanfoo, one of the greatest Cities of *Cochinchina*, and greatest Trade, but the Port failing, it now decays 143-15
Tacan, an Isle where the Fowls retire during the heat 148-12
Tortose Islands 152-11
Tulatan Isle 147-14

An Alphabetical *Index* of all the Towns in the Map of *Japon*.

A
Achas 175-34
Acosaqui 177-34
Aizu 184-38
Akas 174-34
Amessima 171-34
Amusana 175-34
Anai 174-34
Anzuqui 176-35
Aqui 173-34
Aquita 182-40
Arcy 177-34
Ava 174-33
Ava 181-34
Autua 170-33
Axicanga 182-36
Ximot 181-36
B
Bandel 179-34
Bigen 174-35
Bingo 173-34
Bipchu 173-34
Bugen 172-34
Bungo 171-33
C
Camba 179-34
Cango 177-36
Cansula 182-35
Cataizu 175-33
Caucani 175-34
Cochite 170-33
Coreer Isles 169-34
The Sea 171-34
Coyssina 171-34
D
Daura 180-34
Deva 182-38
Dongo 172-33
F
Facoua 180-34
Fairma 174-34
Favissida 178-34
Fintsautwa 177-34
Firanda 170-33
Firazima 172-34
Fitaqui 182-37
Flagway 177-34
Foncorai 178-34
Foqui 174-35
Forissauva 180-35
Fucha 179-36
Fumay 172-33
Fuximi 176-35
G
Ganamisaqui 171-34
Ganomi 172-34
Ginkay 171-34
Gold Mines 184-38
I
Jaai 178-34
Jamman 171-34
Idiumo 173-35
Idzumi 175-34
Jedo or Jendo 181-35
Jesse 184-40
Jesare 179-34
Inaba 174-35
Ingo 176-34
Jobeco 170-33
Jokeits 176-34
Josinda 177-34
Isakuts 176-34
Juani 172-35
Jussimara 179-34
K
Kakinkw 179-34
Kakingaren 178-34
Karaye 178-34
Kisma 170-33
M
Maicazima Isle 183-36
Marganni 174-34
Mia 177-34
Miaco or Meaco 175-34
Micava 177-35
Mimalaca 173-35
Mino 177-34
Mirico 179-34
Mulaxi 181-35
Muro 174-34
N
Nanastgamma 170-33
Namba 184-39
Nangati 171-34
Nangisaqui 171-33
Nayma 178-37
Nibarasacq 178-34
Niborasaca 178-34
Nivata 181-37
Noto 178-37
O
Ocambe 179-34
Ocasaqui 177-34
Okais 179-34
Omodo Key 170-33
Oquayama 174-34
Ormeda 176-34
Oseaca 175-34
Ova 176-34
Owaeri 177-35
Q
Quano 176-34
Quinocuni 175-33
Quirenoxo 176-36
R
Roches 171-33
S
Sacca 178-34
Saccaiia 175-34
Sace 176-34
Saikock 171-33
Samma 176-34
Sando 180-37
Sangani 180-35
Sanuqui 173-34
Saquio 171-34
Sapui 175-34
Sateuma 170-32
Sateque 183-37
Savoia 174-34
Scabarei 179-34
Silver Mines 179-37
Simanda 178-34
Simissima 170-33
Sinagawa 181-35
Sincubi 170-33
Sintsi 176-34
Sino Sima 171-34
Sirion 177-34
Sirack 178-34
Stintgo 175-34
Surunga 179-34
Suva 180-36
Suvo 172-34
T
Tambo 175-35
Tanegaxima 172-32
Tango 175-35
Tatomi 178-35
Tauma 175-35
Tucnocuni 175-34
Tenri River 178-34
Toia 172-33
Tokoesi 173-33
Toi Isle 183-34
Tomo 173-34
Tondozima Isle 180-38
Tottori 174-35
Tsumgaer 184-40
V
Vacosa 176-35
Vasumi 171-32
Ubama 176-35
Vitchu 178-36
Vomi 176-35
Vouri 177-35
Voxu 183-37
W
Waka 176-34
X
Xendai 183-38
Xidaibama 182-37
Xikoso 173-33
Ximo 171-32
Ximosakock 170-33
Ximolu 182-36
Ximomaxoqui 171-34
Xinan 178-35
Xio 173-33
Xiva 177-36
Y
Yamamguela 172-34
Yamato 176-34
Yamaxico 175-34
Yazuqui 174-35
Yechigen 177-36
Yechingo 180-36
Yhe 176-34
Yonazaua 183-38
Ynoxima Isle 183-33
Z
Zetta 170-33
Zima 176-34

FINIS.





A New and Particular

RELATION
Of the KINGDOM of
TUNQUIN:

With a MAP of the COUNTRY and ſeveral FIGURES.

CHAP. I.

A Diſcourſe in general concerning the City of Tunquin, *and of the Manner how the Author came to have knowledge thereof.*

THE Kingdom of *Tunquin* has been long unknown to the People of *Europe*; neither have they, who have given us Relations thereof, well underſtood the Country, as having truſted too much to defective and fabulous Deſcriptions and Obſervations. Not that I am willing to be over ſevere in cenſuring; but ſubmiſſively I am bold to affirm, That this which I here make Public was extracted out of my Brother's Writings, of which I had the overlooking in

my ſecond Voyage that I made to the *Indies*; and of which I was the more confident, for that the Author had been one who had made Eleven or Twelve Voyages from *Batavia*, *Bantam*, and *Achem*, to *Tunquin*. Other Obſervations I collected from the *Tunquineſi* themſelves, with whom I have had ſeveral Diſcourſes, during the time that I was at *Batavia* and *Bantam*, where they principally trade. And that which gave me the more light was this, That thoſe Merchants ſeveral times bring along with them ſome of their *Bonze's* or Prieſts, as alſo ſome of their Learned Men to teach their Children to Write and Read. For theſe Merchants when they make a Voyage by Sea, carry all their Families along with them. And from theſe *Bonze's* and other Learned Men I had ſeveral Obſervations and Memoirs in Writing, as being deſirous to be inform'd by me of the Government and Situation of our *France*. And as I was never without an *Atlas* and ſome other particular Maps, they were raviſh'd with admiration, when I ſhew'd them the Structure and Compoſure of the whole World, and the Situation of its ſeveral Kingdoms and Eſtates.

Therefore may the Reader with the more pleaſure and delight peruſe theſe Relations, when he has ſo much reaſon to be perſuaded that they are cordially done, and that they are made public by a perſon whoſe ſincerity has no deſign to abuſe him. My Brother, who was a perſon both cunning and couragious, and one that lov'd to Travel as well as my ſelf, having heard much talk in the *Indies* of the Grandeur of the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, reſolv'd to go thither, and as he had a particular gift to learn a Language in a little time, he ſoon grew familiar with the *Malaye*, which is the Language of the Learned in thoſe quarters of *Aſia*, as *Latin* is among Us in *Europe*. He underſtood that Silk, Musk, and other Commodities of the like nature, were much cheaper there then in other places adjoyning, and that the People dealt with more fairneſs and honeſty. Upon the encouragement of which Information he prepar'd a Ship, and made his Voyages with good ſucceſs.

He always carri'd with him a good Sum of Money; and more then that, he ſtor'd himſelf with a conſiderable number of ſmall Curioſities, to preſent the King and his Nobility, according to the general Cuſtom of all the Eaſtern Countries:

Thus

Thus he came to be well receiv'd the firſt time that he ſet foot in the Country; ſo that the Cuſtomer being by him oblig'd with a ſmall Clock, a pair of ſmall Piſtols, and two Pictures, which were the Pictures of two *Curteſans*, immediately gave notice to the King of his arrival. Thereupon having order to attend the Court, and coming to kiſs the King's hands, the whole Aſſembly was ſurpris'd to hear a Stranger, born in a Country ſo far diſtant, ſpeak the *Malaye* Language ſo fluently. The King gave him a favourable reception, and kindly receiv'd the Preſent which he brought along with him. It was a very noble Sword, of which the Handle and Hilt were all over enchac'd with Rubies and Emraulds, with a Backſword Blade. To this he added a pair of Piſtols, adorn'd and inlaid with Silver, a *Perſian* Saddle and Bridle, embroider'd with Gold and Silver, a Bow and Quiver full of Arrows, and ſix Pictures, like thoſe which he had given the Cuſtomer. Theſe things highly pleas'd the King, who preſently drew forth the Sword out of the Scabbard, the better to look upon and conſider it. At length one of his Sons took it up, to try whether it would fit his hand as well as thoſe of his own Country, and offer'd to make a blow. My Brother, ſeeing the young Prince handle the Weapon gracefully enough, after the manner of the Country, told the King, that if he pleas'd, he would ſhow the King how they handled that Weapon in *France*, of which the King readily conſented to be a Spectatour.

This was my Brother's firſt Reception at Court; for he made ſeveral Voyages to *Tunquin*, and every time that he return'd, they ſtill the more and more obligingly entertain'd him. But that which fix'd him more in the good opinion and favour of the King and Lords of the Court, was his frolic and gentile behaviour in playing with them for ſeveral large Sums, inſomuch that being one that ventur'd deep; he loſt above 20000 Crowns in one Voyage. However the King, who was a generous Prince, would not ſuffer him to be a loſer, but gave him thoſe conſiderable Preſents that ſuppli'd his loſſes. By means of my Brother's thus long ſojourning in *Tunquin*, and the familiar acquaintance which he had at Court, together with the Trade which he drove in the Kingdom, as he was diligent to inform himſelf of all the Curioſities of the Country, it was eaſie for me upon

the ſame foundation to lay the Structure of theſe Memoirs. Though I may ſafely ſay, I was no leſs laborious in my own particular, and by the frequent Diſcourſes which I had with a great number of the *Tunquineſes*, with whom I met both at *Bantam* and *Batavia* that came thither to Trade, and whom I often treated at my own Expences, to inform my ſelf of the particular Ceremonies and Cuſtoms of their Country.

Thus you ſee the Grounds and Foundations of this Relation, which is both faithful and exact, and by which that noble Country, of which the Deſcriptions hitherto have been ſo obſcure and uncertain, ſhall be truly diſcover'd and ſet forth, ſuch as it is; declaring withal, that no other Conſideration or Intereſt, then that of ſpeaking truth, has incited me to undertake this Deſcription.

For the better obſervation of a right Method in purſuance of this Relation, and to conduct the Reader *gradatim* to the more perfect knowledge of this Kingdom, I will ſpeak firſt of its Situation, its Extent, and its Climate. Next I ſhall come to diſcourſe of its Qualities, its Riches, and its Trade, which are the three Springs and Sources of the Strength and Force of a Nation. Next I ſhall give an Account of the Cuſtoms and Manners of the People as well in their particular OEconomy and Civil Society, as in relation to their Marriages, their Viſits and Feſtivals. Next to this we ſhall give a brief Account of the Learning, and learned Men, and among them of their Phyſicians, and the Subject of their Art, that is to ſay, of the Diſeaſes particular to the Country. We ſhall alſo give a Relation of the Original of the Government and Policy of the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, of the Condition of the Court, of the Inauguration and Funerals of their Kings, and in the laſt place of the Original of the Inhabitants.

And I dare ingage, that the Map of the Country, and the Cuts which were drawn upon the place, will no leſs contribute to the Divertiſement of the Reader, then to the Explanation of the Matter which they contain.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of the Situation and Extent of the Kingdom of Tunquin.

WE ſhall have the leſs reaſon to admire wherefore our Predeceſſors had ſo little knowledge of this Kingdom, when we conſider that having formerly been a conſiderable part of *China*, the Inhabitants in the ſame manner as the *Chineſes* did, kept themſelves cloſe within their own bounds, never minding to have any Commerce with other People, whom they contemn'd and lookt upon as *Barbarians* come from the other part of the World. But now that they find that Strangers come to find them out in their own Territories, they begin to ſee that other People have as good Government as themſelves; which has bred in them a deſire to Converſe and Trade with Foreigners; ſo that now they aſſociate themſelves in friendly manner with all other People, as I have obſerv'd them to do both at *Batavia* and *Bantam*. Moſt people believe this Country to lye in a very hot Climate; nevertheleſs it is now known to be very temperate, by reaſon of the great number of Rivers that water it; which, together with the Rains that fall in their Seaſons, cauſe a briſk freſhneſs of the Air; which indeed happ'ns moſt uſually over all the *Torrid-zone*, as I have obſerv'd in my *Indian Travels*. From whence we may alſo have reaſon to believe the Country to be very fruitful and thick inhabited.

To the Eaſt this Kingdom lies upon the Province of *Canton*, one of the beſt of *China*.

To the Weſt it is bounded by the Kingdom of *Brama*.

To the North it borders upon two other Provinces of *China*, *Junnan* and *Quanſi*.

To the South it lies upon *Cochinchina*, and the great Gulph of the ſame name.

To return to the Climate, the Air is ſo mild and temperate, that all the year long ſeems to be but one continual Spring; Froſt and Snow are never there to be ſeen; and beſides,

beſides, the Peſtilence, the Gout, the Stone, and other Diſeaſes ſo frequent in *Europe*, there are never known. There are but two Winds, which divide the whole Year between them; the one blowing from the North, the other from the South, and both continuing the ſame for ſix months together. The firſt refreſhes the Earth in that manner, that there is nothing ſo delightful as the Country of *Tunquin*. The other begins to blow from the end of *January* to the end of *July*; and the two laſt months are their months of rain. The greateſt inconvenience is, that there ariſe once in ſeaven years, as well in this Country as in other parts of the *Indies*, thoſe hideous and terrible Tempeſts, that blow down Houſes, tear up Trees by the roots, and make ſtrange Deſolations. They ſeldom laſt above four and twenty hours, nor are their ſad Effects to be felt but only upon the Seas of *China*, *Japon*, *Cochinchina*, *Tunquin*, and the *Manilles*, being rarely known in any other Seas.

The Aſtrologers of thoſe parts believe that theſe terrible Tempeſts proceed from the Exhalations that riſe out of the Mines of *Japon*. It comes with that ſuddain force that when it ſurprizes a Veſſel out at Sea, the Pilots have no other remedy then to cut down all the Maſts, that the ſtorm may have the leſs force upon the Ship.

In this fair extent of Land, almoſt equal to that of *France*, are ſeveral Provinces, whoſe limmits are not well known; the *Tunquineſes* being no great Geographers, nor having bin over curious to write the Annals of the Nation. But the moſt underſtanding and knowing among them aſſur'd me at *Batavia*, that the whole Kingdom contain'd above twenty thouſand Cities and Towns. They alſo affirm'd that there might be many more, but after the manner of their Neighbours the *Cochinchineſes*, many of the People chooſe rather to upon the Water then upon the Land; ſo that you ſhall ſee live the greateſt part of their Rivers coverd with Boates, which ſerve them inſtead of Houſes; and which are very neat, though they alſo keep their Cattel in them.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Quality of the Kingdom of Tunquin.

THis Country for the moſt part is a level Extent; which riſes up and down into pleaſant Hillocks; the greateſt Hills which it has lying to the North. It is water'd by ſeveral Rivers which inter-cut and glide through the Country: ſome of which carry Galleys of good burthen, and large Shallops, very commodious for trade. Yet in all the Country there grows neither Corn nor Wine, by reaſon of the want of rain, which never falls but in the Months of *June* and *July*. But it bears an infinite quantity of Rice, which is the chief ſuſtenance of the People. Of this Rice alſo they make their Drink, beſides which they have good *Aqua Vitæ* or Strong-water. Their Fruits are excellent, but much different from ours, as are alſo the Trees that bear them. The chiefeſt of theſe Trees are the Palm-tree, which bears a Fruit bigger then in any part of *Aſia*. The Nut is about the bigneſs of a Man's Head; in ſhape like a *Coco*-nut; the Shell is very hard, and being open'd, the Pulp within is as white as Snow, having a taſt like our Almonds, and every one of the Fruits contains about two glaſsfuls of Liquor, very refreſhing and pleaſing to the Palate. The *Gogavier*, very much reſembles our Lawrel, of which there are two ſorts; the one bears a Plum, green without and red within: but the Fruit of the other Tree, which is in much more eſteem, is yellowiſh without and white within, the top of the Fruit being like a ſmall Noſegay: the Pulp is full of ſmall Kernels, leſs then thoſe of a Pomegranate; and if they be eaten before they are ripe they bind the belly, whereas being eaten when they are come to full maturity they work a contrary effect. Formerly this Fruit was not known in the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, but after the *Portugals* ſeated themſelves at *Macao*, they carri'd ſeveral Plants thither, ſo that now the Fruit is grown very common. The *Papager* bears a Fruit which very much reſembles a ſmall Melon, the taſt whereof is very delicious. The *Arager* grows upright and ſtreight, like the Maſt of a Ship,

Ship, bearing no Branches but at the top; which makes it appear like a Crown. The Fruit which it produces is like a Nutmeg, but a little more round. The People break this Nut, and bruising it together with *Betle* leaves, mix both with a little Chalk, and make use of the Powder to keep their Teeth clean, to dye their Lips of a Vermilion colour, and to keep their Breath sweet.

They have but two sorts of Figs, the one like ours, and the other like those which are call'd *Adam*'s Figs, as long as a Man's finger.

There is also another Tree, very like our *Willow*, which they call the *Powder Tree*, because that of the Wood they make Charcoal, and of the Coal a Powder which they make use of in their Wars.

The *Jambager* is another Tree, that grows very high, which bears a Fruit about the bigness of a Citrul-Cucumber, the Pulp whereof is full of Kernels like a Granate, very cooling and pleasant, and very frequently eaten in the Season of heat.

The High-ways are also planted with Trees on both sides for the convenience of Travellers: And there are some of these Trees so big that two or three thousand men may stand under them, like that at *Ormus*, or *Bandar Abassi*, by me describ'd in my Relations of *Persia*; and of which many other Travellers have made mention. When the Branches of these Trees are about ten or twelve foot long, there issue forth other little Branches which turn downward, and by little and little descending to the ground, take root and afterwards become as it were so many Pillars to support the *Master*-Branches. There are some of the *Master*-Branches three hundred Paces long, which are supported by these outgrowing Branches at the distance of every ten or twelve foot. The Fruit is of the bigness of one of our great Nuts, the Shell whereof is red, containing within nothing but a Kernel like a grain of Millet. The Rere Mice feed upon 'em, and also make their Nests in the trees. These Rere-mice are as big as a good Pullet, insomuch that their Wings are above a foot and a half long. They never light upon the tree like other Birds, but you shall see them all the day long hanging at the branches of the trees, fasten'd by their Claws to the tree with their heads downward. Upon every Wing they

they have ſeven as it were little Hooks or Claws, ſo that being ſhot, they never fall to the ground, but remain fixed to the branches, that at a diſtance you would take them to be ſome great Pears that hung upon the tree. They are accounted a great dainty among the *Portugals*, who leave their Pullets to eat them. 'Tis true that their Fleſh is very white, and when they are young they are a delicate ſort of Diet. I happen'd to eat of them two or three times with the *Portugals*, who thought they had oblig'd me with a great dainty; and had I not known what they were, I ſhould have taken them for Pullets. And now I am talking of the Delicacies of the Country, I will tell you of one ſort of Dyet which is very ſingular. This Food is the Neſt of a certain Bird which is no where to be found, but in the four Iſlands that lie upon the Coaſt of *Cochinchina*, and of which you have the Figures in the Table *A, B, C, D*. Theſe Birds are about the bigneſs of a Swallow, and build their Neſts in ſuch a manner, that they are neither too cloſe compacted, nor altogether tranſparent; they are like an Onion compos'd of ſeveral rings and envelopings; that compoſe a Neſt of a certain ſort of *Gunim*, which is ſteep'd in warm water, and mix'd with all the Sawces which are made both for Fiſh and Fleſh. It is tranſported all over *India* and into *Holland* for Curioſitie's ſake. You would believe in eating thoſe Meats which are ſeaſon'd therewith, that thoſe Neſts were compos'd of all the Spices in the Orient. I have not only brought this Diet into *France*, and preſented of it to ſeveral Perſons of Quality, but I have alſo my Vouchers for the truth of what I relate, ſeveral of my Friends who have brought it from *Holland*, among the reſt *M. de Villermont*, whoſe Name is famous for his Travels into the *Eaſt-Indies*. He and all thoſe that have eat thereof agree with me, that all the Spices of the *Eaſt* put together, do not give that effectual reliſh and ſavour as theſe Neſts do, to the Meats and Diſhes wherein they are us'd.

Near to theſe four Iſlands, where theſe Birds Neſts are found, are five others mark'd in the Map 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. In theſe five Iſlands are ſuch infinite number of *Tortoiſes*, and ſuch excellent Food, that the *Tunquineſes* and *Cochinchineſes* do not believe they have entertain'd their Friends at a Banquet as they ought to do, till the *Tortoiſes* are brought in. Thoſe

two Nations pickle up great quantities of them, and ſend them abroad, which is a vaſt trade among them; and indeed the chiefeſt occaſion of the Wars between them is, becauſe the *Cochinchineſes* do all they can to hinder the *Tunquineſes* to fiſh for them, alledging that thoſe Seas and Iſlands belong to them. Neither is the Meat but the Shell alſo of great eſteem, and one of the greateſt Commodities for Trade in *Aſia*.

Tunquin alſo affords great ſtore of *Anana's* and Orange trees, of which there are of two ſorts: the one that bears a Fruit no bigger then an *Abricot*; the other bigger then thoſe of *Portugal*: both alike in taſt, and being to be gather'd from the tree for ſix months together. They have alſo two ſorts of Citrons, the one yellow, the other green; but both the one and the other ſo tart and ſow'r, that they cannot be eaten without offence to the Stomach. Nevertheleſs, the Juyce is made uſe of as we do here of *Aqua fortis*, to cleanſe Copper, Tin, and Iron, before we gild thoſe Metals, as alſo for Tinctures, eſpecially thoſe of Silk. They are alſo made uſe of for Lyes to whiten Linnen, and to take out Spots. Through all the Territories of the *Great Mogul* they make uſe of this Juyce of Citrons to whiten their Calicuts; whereby they make them ſometimes ſo white that they dazle the ſight.

They make great quantities of Silk in the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, of which both rich and poor make themſelves Garments. The *Hollanders*, who thruſt themſelves in every where, where there is any hope of gain, carry off ſuch a quantity every year, that it is now become the chiefeſt part of that Commodity which they carry to *Japon*; whereas before they fetch'd their Commodities from *Perſia*, *Bengala*, or *China*.

As for ſweet ſmelling Flow'rs, the *Tunquineſes* have but one ſort, which they call the Flow'r of *Bague*. It grows like a large Noſegay, and the Branches of the Shrub that bear it, ſpread themſelves crawlingly upon the ground. As they have great ſtore of Sugar, ſo they eat very much, while it is yet in the Cane, not having the true Art to refine it: and that which they do groſly refine, they make into little Loaves weighing about half a pound. They eat very much, making uſe of it always after Meals to help digeſtion.

Through

Through the whole Kingdom are neither Lions, Aſſes, nor Sheep; but the Foreſts are full of Tigers, Harts, and Apes, and the Fields are full of Beeves, Cows, and Hogs. As for Hens, Ducks, and Turtles, they are not to be numberd, which is the general Proviſion for their Feſtivals. Their Horſes are very well ſhap'd; of which there are always five or ſix hunder'd in the King's Stables; He alſo keeps the ſame number of Elephants, of which ſome are for the Service of his Houſe, the reſt bred for the Wars. Theſe Elephants are of a prodigious bigneſs, neither are there any ſo tall nor ſo nimble in any part of *Aſia*; for they will bow themſelves, and ſtoop ſo low, that you may get upon their backs without help. They have no Cats, but they have Dogs that ſerve for the ſame purpoſe, and will watch all night to kill the Rats and Mice, which are very large and very troubleſom. Very few Birds are to be ſeen in the Air, which toward the evening grows duskiſh, by reaſon of thoſe vaſt number of Ghats that get into the Houſes in the night time and hinder people from ſleeping, not only by the noiſe which they make, but with their continual ſtinging; which is one of the greateſt inconveniencies of the Country. For remedy whereof in ſome meaſure, an hour before they go to ſleep they take the Huſk or Chaff of the Rice, which flies from the Rice when it is beaten, and ſtrew it upon a ſmall Fire in a Fire-ſhovel, and ſo let it ſmoak, and by that means they kill or drive thoſe Flies away. Beſides this, they cover the Bed with a Pavilion or Tent that trails upon the ground, made like a Net with very ſmall holes to let in the Air. But notwithſtanding all the prevention can be us'd, they will be about a man when he riſes i' the morning. But there is yet a far greater inconvenience in this Country, which proceeds from the infinite numbers of white Emmets, which though they are but little, have teeth ſo ſharp, that they will eat down a wooden Poſt in a ſhort time. And if great care be not taken in the places where you lock up your Bales of Silk, in four and twenty hours they will eat through a Bale, as if it had been ſaw'd in two in the middle. Several of them have fallen from the Cieling into my Neck, where they rais'd Bliſters upon the Skin, which preſently fall again being waſh'd with cold Water.

I have told you that Hens and Ducks are infinitely numerous in *Tunquin*; I will now tell you how they preſerve the Eggs of theſe Creatures, which they will keep for two or three years together without being ſpoil'd. They ſalt them, and to make them take ſalt, they fill a Veſſel full of Water, and throw a good quantity of Salt into it. If the Egg ſink to the bottom, the Pickle is not good; then they throw in more Salt, till they find that the Eggs ſwim. The Pickle being thus made, they take Aſhes, and make them up into a Paſt with this Pickle: and in this Paſt they encloſe every Egg by it ſelf, and then wrap it up in a leaf of an Herb, not unlike one of our Pear-tree leaves, but much larger, and then put the Eggs into Earthen Pots cloſe cover'd: after which manner they keep their Eggs for two or three years together.

In other parts of the *Indies* where there is great ſtore of Oyl, as in the Dominions of the *Great Mogul*, the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, and *Arochan*, they put their Eggs into great Earthen Pots well varniſh'd, and then fill the Veſſel with an Oyl which is made of a ſmall Seed like Rape-ſeed. For as for Sallad Oyl, after you are once paſs'd *Aleppo*, you ſee no more Olive-trees over all *Aſia*, but only in one place of *Perſia* near *Casbin*, where between the Mountains lies a little Valley, about a League long and half a League broad, full of Olive-trees, but they make but very little Oyl, preſerving the Olives only to eat. But to return to the Eggs; they are the chief Proviſion which they eat a Ship-board. But the Eggs which are preſerv'd in Salt are preferr'd much before thoſe that are kept in Oyl; becauſe that in uſing the firſt, there is no need of carrying Salt to Sea, or of boiling Salt with their Rice. When they eat them, they boil them till they are hard, and with every mouthful of Rice they eat a Pea's bigneſs of Egg, which is as good and better then Salt with their Rice. As to what remains, there are neither Mines of Gold nor Silver in the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, neither do they Coin any Money.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Riches, Trade, and Money of the Kingdom of Tunquin.

THE chief Riches of the Country of *Tunquin* conſiſt in the great quantity of Silks which they ſell to the *Hollanders*, and other Foreigners, and in their *Lignum Aloes*. Of which there is ſome worth a thouſand Crowns the Pound, according to its goodneſs and oylineſs. There is ſome that is not worth above three Crowns; but it is dry and good for nothing but to make Cabinets, or Beads to hang about Womens Necks. All the *Mahumetans*, eſpecially ſuch as let their Beards grow, make great account of this Wood; and when they give a Viſit, they preſently bring a little Chafing-diſh, and caſt a ſmall piece of this Wood upon the Coals, which yields a ſmoak and pleaſing miſt; with which they perfume their Beards, at the ſame time lifting up their hands to Heaven, and crying, *Elhemed Illah*, or *God be thanked*. If the Wood be oily, the bigneſs of a Pea will ſerve to throw upon the fire, which being a little moiſten'd in Water, will yield as much ſmoak as a dry piece as big as a Man's fiſt. Which is the reaſon, that if it be oily and good it wants no price. One of the chief Preſents, as I have obſerv'd in another part of this Book, which the *Portugals* of *Goa* ſent to the Emperor of *Japon*, was a piece of *Lignum Aloes*, ſix foot long, and two round. It coſt 40000 *Pardo's* or 54000 *Livres*.

It is ſo much the more pleaſure and profit to trade with the People of *Tunquin*, by how much the more faithful and frank they are in their dealing then the *Chineſes*, who will deceive you if they can; ſo that it is a hard thing to be too cunning for them, as I have often found by experience. When you have ſold them any Commodity, and they find that their Bargain is not very advantageous, their general way of getting off is this: As they have generally three ſorts of Reals, one ſort that is full weight, others which are light, four, others eight *per Cent.* if they have no mind to ſtand to their bargain, they offer to pay you for your Goods

in

in light Reals, which they have clipt themſelves, and ſo you are deceiv'd. There are no ſuch People for Trade in the World: they refuſe to deal in nothing, even in old Shoes, and if you will ſell them but one of them too, they'l buy it, without ever enquiring why you will not ſell the other. But for thoſe of *Tunquin* they are more blunt and plain in their dealing, ſo that it is a pleaſure to have to deal with them. I have told you, there are neither Mines of Gold or Silver in *Tunquin*, neither do they Coin Money there. So that in Trade they make uſe of certain Lingots of Gold, as they are brought out of *China*, ſome of which amount to 300 Livres of our Money, others to ſix hunder'd. They alſo make uſe of Bars of Silver as they are brought from *Japon*. As for ſmall Payments they either cut the large Bars into ſmall pieces, to which purpoſe they have their Scales, like our *Stelleers*; or elſe they pay in Foreign Coin, which are the Reals of *Spain* generally. This Gold and Silver is brought from *China*, and *Japon*, in lieu of thoſe vaſt quantities of Silk which are exported out of the Country, which with Musk and *Lignum Aloes* are the chief Riches of the Kingdom.

CHAP. V.

Of the Strength of the Kingdom of Tunquin *by Sea and Land.*

THey who have written before me concerning the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, have ſpoken largely of its Forces both by Sea and Land, and allow it a prodigious number both of Souldiers and Galleys. They write that the Forces which were uſually wont to meet at the Rendevouz were 12000 Horſe, 2000 Elephants, as well to carry the King's and the Nobilities Tents and Baggage, as for the Service of the War, 300000 Foot, and 300 Galleys. And in regard the Kingdom is well ſtor'd with Proviſion and Ammunition, that in time of War the whole Army exceeds 500000 Men. But the number which my Brother

ſaw

The King of *Tunquin*'s Setting out for the War.

1. *The King going out of his Palace is carried in his* Palanquin *or Chair by the Chief Officers of his Houſhold.*

2. *The Order of the King's March when he goes to the War.*

3. *The Muſicians and Trumpeters who follow his Chair.*

4. *An Officer who carries a Baſon full of Water, on which doth float a Braſs Boul with a hole in the bottom of it; ſo that exactly in an hour this Boul becomes full of Water, and ſuddenly ſinks to the bottom.*

5. *Then preſently two other Officers do ſtrike the Hour upon two great Braſs Platters, N.5. of about a Yard Diameter, and much after the Form of our Burning Glaſſes, yet of the Metall that Bells are made of, which cauſes that they are heard a very far off.*

Afterwards he that carries the Baſon of Water takes up the Cup from the bottom, and ſets it again a ſwimming atop of the Water, juſt as it was before. When it is full and ſinks, they after the ſame manner ſtrike on the ſaid Platters. And this is their way of reckoning the Hour and Times in Tunquin, *as well as in the* Indies, *and almoſt throughout the Eaſtern Parts betwixt the* Tropicks; *for that the Clocks which are made in* Europe *become uſeleſs in thoſe Countries during the Rainy Seaſon, the Air being there ſo heavy and damp, that all Iron and Steel, nay the very Knives and Watches in peoples Pockets do grow ruſty, though you wrap them up never ſo well in Cotton or Leather, and take all the care imaginable to keep them dry; yet it will be impoſſible otherwiſe to preſerve them from Ruſt, than by letting them lie in Oyl while that Weather laſts.*

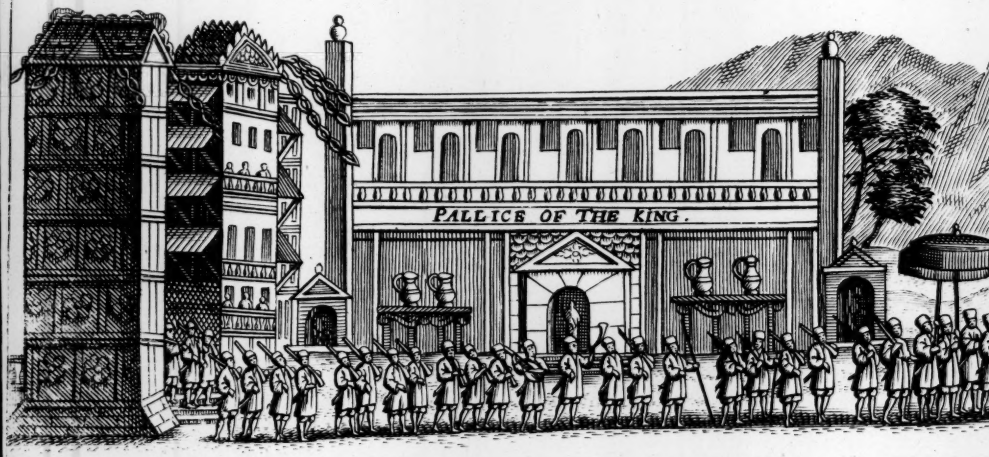
This Foggy Dampneſs of the Air is predominant as ſoon as you are paſt Perſia, *in all the* Mogol's *Countrey, from the Fifteenth of* June *to the end of* September. *The further one goes on toward the Eaſt, the later theſe Rains do begin and are met withall.*

It's

It's good likewiſe to obſerve, that in the Empire of the Great Mogul, *in* Tunquin, *and in other Eaſterly Parts between the* Tropicks, *they do as we divide the Day and Night into* 24 *Hours, making the Day of* 12, *and the Night to be of as much; ſo to proportion equally the Times of Working and of Reſt. But they do ſubdivide both the Day and the Night into* 4 *equal parts, and this Diviſion is made known by the Strokes given upon thoſe Platters. As for Example: The firſt Hour of the firſt Watch of the Night is mark'd by one Blow, the ſecond by another, and the third likewiſe by another. In the ſecond Watch of the Night the firſt Hour is made known by two Blows one after another, and ſo of the reſt untill the third Watch; then at the firſt Hour of that they give three Strokes. And this Order is obſerved till the laſt Hour of the fourth Watch, which is mark'd by four Knocks. In this manner they continue to marck the firſt Hour of the day with the ſame Regularity.*

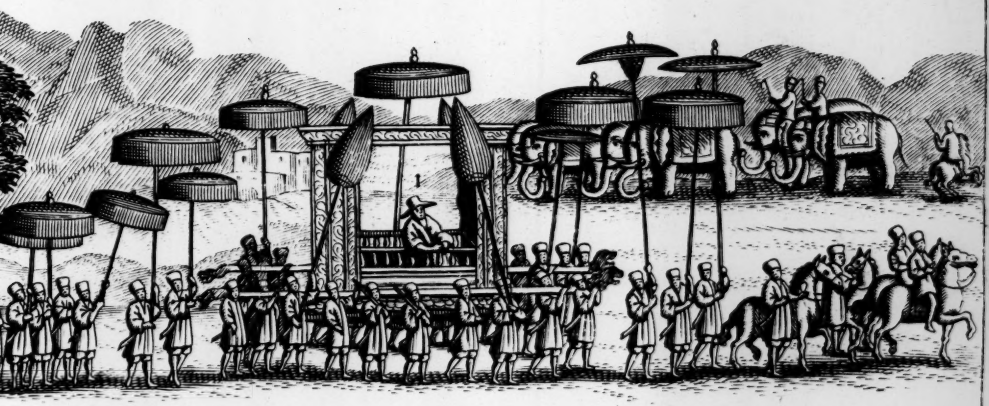
All Perſons of Quality do keep Eight Officers on purpoſe for this Imploy; who likewiſe are to have a care of keeping the Palace Gates. This Engine for the marking of the Hours is ordinarily hung up at the Entry of great Palaces near the Porter's Lodge.

Place this Page 14.



Order of The March of The king of Tunquin

The order & March Of The king of Tunquin



unquin When he goes Out Of his Pallice.

quin When He goes To Warr:

The Order of the March of the Queen Mother and Reigning

ming Queen of Tunquin when they goe abroad out of ỹ Palace

The Order of the March of the Queens of *Tunquin*, when they go abroad out of the Palace.

A. *Six Elephants go in the Front, drawing a kind of a Sedan close shut up, with Grate-like Windows.*

B. *Fifteen Captains or Officers walk next, Armed with Fire-locks.*

C. *The Sedan wherein the Queen is.*

D. *Six of the Queens Gentlemen do carry* Parasols, *for to guard the Queens Chair from the Scorching of the* Sun.

F. *Six Ladies of Honour of the Queens go next. The first hath the Command of the Queens Eunuchs: these Eunuchs, though throughly Spaded, yet are never admitted into the Queens Apartment; the Kings of* Tunquin *being in that particular more jealous than other Kings and Mahometan Princes, who allow this sort of Eunuchs to serve their Queens within the Palace. The next in Office of these Ladies presents the Queen with Sweet Meats when she is about to drink; for they usually eat some before they drink, they alleaging that this keeps them from having the Cholic, to which they are very subject in* Tunquin. *The third in rank carries a Box of Perfumes and* Betel. *The others usher the Queen when she gets into the Sedan, or alights.*

G. *Here is a Chariot drawn by Eight Maids of Quality, when she gets out of the Sedan; but before she appears, all the Men and Eunuchs do withdraw into such places, whence they cannot have the sight of her, it being a Crime to look upon her: then the Ladies help her out of the Sedan, and the Maids draw her along to whatever place she has a mind to go in unto.*

Place this next to, The King of *Tunquin* setting out for the War.

16
3
48 | 2.8
3
5. 8

ſaw in the year 1649, when the King was preparing to make War againſt the King of *Cochinchina*, for certain Ships which the *Cochinchineſes* had taken from the *Tunquineſes*: though the Quarrel was taken up by certain Embaſſadors which the King of *Cochinchina* ſent to the King of *Tunquin*, to whom the former made ſatisfaction.

The Army that was then prepar'd to march upon this Expedition was compos'd of 8000 Horſe, 94 thouſand Foot, and 722 Elephants; 130 for the War, and the reſt to carry the Tents and Baggage of the King and the Nobility; and 318 Galleys and Barks, very long and narrow, with Oars and Sails; and this was that which my Brother ſaw. The Condition of the Souldiery is very toilſom and laborious, and of little advantage in the Kingdom of *Tunquin*. For they are all their life time ſo ti'd and engag'd to the Service of the Wars, that though they are capable of other Labours for the ſupport of their Families, they are not permitted to undertake it. Thoſe days that they are not upon the Guard, they are oblig'd to attend their Captains where-ever they go, and two days in a week they are compell'd to Exerciſe with their Bows and Arrows in their preſence. Their Companies conſiſt of a hundred or a hundred and thirty Men; and they of each Company that have made the beſt ſhot, have one of them two Months Wages, the other one, which is paid them in Rice. He that makes the worſt ſhot, next time he mounts the Guard, is oblig'd to ſtand Centinel double his time. All the Captains look upon it as a great piece of glory to have their Souldiers Arms and Weapons neat and bright. If they find any ruſt upon them, they ſconce them eight days Wages for the firſt fault, and for the ſecond they are very ſeverely chaſtis'd. As for thoſe that ſerve in the Galleys, they are entertain'd and liſted proportionably. And ſometimes the Captains ſend their Souldiers aboard for ſome days, that they may learn to row. For it is one of the chiefeſt Paſtimes of the Kings of *Tunquin* to ſee the Mock-fights of the Galleys. When he has a mind to delight himſelf with this Divertiſment, the King, with ſome part of his Court, removes to one of his fair Palaces, that ſtands upon one of the largeſt Rivers in his Country; and it is a great Honour for any of the Captains whoſe Souldiers carry the Victory. Now as the Victory is only got by the force

force of the Oars, it happens ſometimes that there are ſome Souldiers who ſtrain themſelves ſo hard, that they fall down dead with the Oar in their hands: for the King is the only Judge of the Combat. Wherein the pleaſure that he takes is ſuch, that he ſends an Elephant to the Captain that obtains the Victory, and gives him three Months Wages beſides. If any Souldier chance to die in this Exerciſe, his Widow or his Heirs have two years Pay. But notwithſtanding all their pain and labour, their Wages are ſo ſmall, that they are not able to maintain their Wives and Children. But in regard they Marry very young in this Country, the Wives as well of the Souldiers as of all the meaner ſort of people, take care to learn ſome Trade beſides, that they may be able to maintain their Families. The Captains alſo have their work prepar'd for them. For they are oblig'd to look after the King's Elephants, and to manage them for the Wars, and ſo to breed them, that they may not be afraid of Wild-fire, or any other Artificial Fires: as alſo to build places all along the Rivers, for the Galleys to ride ſhelter'd in, when they can no longer live out at Sea. All theſe Officers and Captains, and Lords of the Court, which are generally call'd *Mandarins*, have but four days in a Month to divert themſelves, two at the firſt change of the Moon, and two at the full.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Manners and Cuſtoms of the People of the Kingdom of Tunquin.

THe People of *Tunquin* are naturally mild and peaceful, ſubmitting eaſily to reaſon, and condemning the Tranſports of Choler. They eſteem the Manufactures of ſtrange Countries far beyond thoſe of their own; though they are not very curious of ſeeing any other Countries but thoſe where they were born; and where, as they ſay, they always deſire to live, to honour the Memory of their Anceſtors. They have a tone in ſpeaking, naturally

rally ſoft and pleaſing; happy memories, and in their Language, which is very florid, they uſe ſeveral appoſite Compariſons. They have good Poets among them, and People that love Learning; in which reſpect they are no way inferiour to the *Chineſes*, their Neighbours.

The *Tunquineſes*, as well Men as Women, are for the moſt part well proportion'd, of an Olive Complexion, very much admiring the whiteneſs of the *Europeans*. Their Noſes and Faces are not ſo flat as thoſe of the *Chineſes*, as being generally better made. Their Hair is very black, which they uſually wear as long as it will grow, being very careful in combing it. The Common People plait it in treſſes, and tie it like a great Roll upon the top of their Heads. But the Nobility, Men of Law, and Souldiers, tie their Locks about their Necks, that they may not flutter in their Faces. They do not believe their Teeth to be handſom, till they have made them as black as jet; and they ſuffer their Nails to grow; the longeſt being accounted the faireſt.

Their Habit is grave and modeſt, being a long Robe that reaches down to their heels, much like that of the *Japonneſes*, without any diſtinction of Sex. This Habit is bound about at the waiſt with a Girdle of Silk, interwoven with Gold and Silver, the Workmanſhip whereof is alike on both ſides. As for the Souldiers, their upper Garments reach no farther then their Knees; only their Breeches reach down to the mid Leg, without either Hoſe or Shoes.

The vulger ſort of People are altogether ſlaves for one part of the year. For unleſs they be the Citizens of the Capital City, where the King keeps his Court, all the other Handicrafts of what Trade ſoever, as Joyners, Carpenters, Lockſmiths, Maſons, and the like, are oblig'd every year to work three Months at the King's Palace; and two Months, or Moons more (For the *Tunquineſes* reckon their Months by the Moon) for the *Mandarins*, or great Lords. The reſt of the year is for themſelves, all which time they have liberty to work for the ſupport of their own Family. This Service in their Language is call d *Viecquan*, or the *Condition of a Slave*. But they are liable to other drudgeries worſe then thoſe before mention'd; as to lop Trees, with which they chiefly feed their Elephants. This is a ſevere days work, to which they were condemn'd by the great Grandfather of

the King that now reigns, after he had put an end to the Civil Wars that turmoil'd his Kingdom, and that he had brought his rebellious Subjects to ſubmit themſelves. They had occaſion'd him a great deal of trouble, and in regard he could not ſubdue them without a great hazard of his Army, his Council advis'd him to famiſh them; but he rather choſe to give them their Lives, and to condemn them and their Poſterity to this laborious Service, of which he might in time reap the benefit.

I have told you elſewhere that the *Tunquineſes* take great delight to live upon the Rivers, which are there free from Crocodiles and all other dangerous Animals, which haunt the Waters of *Nile* and *Ganges*. Where we are to obſerve, that theſe Rivers overflow their Banks every year, after the Rains are fall'n, with that terrible violence, that many times they carry away whole Towns and Villages, at what time a good part of the Kingdom looks like a Sea, reſembling the lower *Egypt* under Water upon the Inundation of *Nile*.

CHAP. VII.

Of the Marriages of the Tunquineſes, *and their ſeverity toward Adultereſſes.*

THE *Tunquineſes* cannot Marry without the conſent of the Father and Mother, or if they be dead, without the allowance of their neareſt Kindred. They muſt alſo have the permiſſion of the Judge or Governour of the place where the Marriage is to be made, for the obtaining of which they muſt give him ſome Preſent. But in regard they were wont to exact upon the poor people more then they were able to give them, ſo that many Marriages were diſappointed, to the great damage of the Public; the King, who reign'd in the year 1639, being inform'd of theſe Extortions, and their ill Conſequences, ſet forth a Law to regulate thoſe Abuſes, and to curb the Authority of the Governours. He order'd that the young Man who was deſirous to Marry, ſhould pay no more then ſuch a Sum, according

to

to the proportion of his Eſtate, amounting to one or two fourths *per Cent.* and that they that were not worth above a hundred Crowns ſhould pay nothing. Now in regard the Common People, both Men and Women, are naturally laborious, all that the Maids can get they preſerve for their Portions, and to buy them two or three handſom Garments, with a Neck-lace of Coral or yellow Amber, and a certain number of Beads, to garniſh their Locks; which they ſuffer to hang down upon their Backs; accounting the beauty of their Hair to conſiſt in the length.

There is no Wedding kept without a great Feaſt; and they muſt be very poor when the Feaſt laſts not above three days; for ſometimes they junket for nine days together. The next day after the Wedding the Bridgroom calls the Bride his Siſter, and ſhe calls the Bridegroom Brother. The Law of the Land permits the Man to divorce his wife when he pleaſes, which they do many times for very ſlight cauſes. But the Woman has not the ſame Priviledge: or at leaſt, if ſhe deſire a ſeparation, it is much more difficult to obtain; and the occaſion muſt be very notorious. The *Tunquineſes* ſay that this Law was made to keep the Women in ſubjection, and to oblige them to be reſpectful to their Husbands. When the Husband deſires this ſeparation, the Ceremony is this. You muſt know that many of the Eaſtern People never touch their Victuals with their hands, but make uſe of two little ſticks about ſix inches long, gilt and varniſh'd, which ſerve them inſtead of Forks. The Husband then, when he goes about to repudiate his Wife, takes one of his own ſticks, and one of his Wife's, and having broken them, they take each one half, and ſow it up in a piece of Silk, in which they keep it. Then the Man is bound to reſtore the Woman what ſhe brought with her, and to keep the Children which they had between them. But theſe Divorces are not half ſo frequent as formerly.

The Laws are alſo very rigorous againſt Adultereſſes. So that if a woman accus'd of this crime be convicted thereof, ſhe is caſt to an Elephant bred up to this purpoſe, who preſently throws her up into the Air with his Trunk, and when ſhe comes to the ground, tramples her under his feet, till he can perceive no life in her.

While my Brother was at the Court at *Tunquin*, he was a

witneſs of the ſevere Puniſhment, to which a Princeſs was condemn'd, for being taken in the Act with a certain Prince. It is the Cuſtom in the *Eaſt*, when a Prince dies, to ſhut up in the moſt private and retir'd part of all his Palace all the women which he made uſe of in his life time. There they are allow'd two Maids to attend them, they eat alone, and ſee no perſon living any more to the very day of their deaths. I cannot tell by what means one of the Princes of the blood had got a view of one of the deceaſed King his Uncle's wives; but being deſirous to ſee her again, and to overcome all difficulties that oppos'd him, and to deceive the Guards that watch'd the Dores, he made uſe of a ſlight not eaſily diſcover'd. For you muſt know, that in the Kingdom *Tunquin*, as in all the Kingdoms of *Aſia*, in the Houſes of the Kings and other great Lords, the Kitchin is uſually ſeparated from the Houſe, and that the Garden is between them; ſo that for the better carrying the Meat from one place to another, the Servants make uſe of a kind of Flasket, or rather Iron Cheſt. And to keep the Meat warm, the Diſhes are ſupported by little ſticks laid athwart, about an inch diſtant one from another, under which is an Iron Plate with holes pierc'd quite through, about half a foot above another, which makes the bottom of the Cheſt; between which Plates they put lighted Coals, to keep the Meat warm. Theſe Cheſts being to be carri'd by two men, the *Tunquineſe* Prince plaid his game ſo well, that he was put into one of theſe Cheſts wherein the Princeſſes Meat was wont to be carri'd up into her Apartment. But he was not there many days before the thing was diſcover'd. He was preſently brought before the King, who caus'd him to have ſeveral weighty Chains to be put about his Neck and Waſt, and upon his Hands and Leggs; and thus chain'd and manacled, he order'd him to be led about for five Months together, to be ſeen by the People. After that he was ſhut up in a cloſe Priſon, where he remain'd ſeven years, till the death of the King, whoſe Son coming to the Throne, ſet him at liberty, upon condition he ſhould ſerve as a private Souldier upon the Frontiers of the Kingdom. As for the Princeſs ſhe was ſhut up in a little Chamber upon the top of a Tow'r, where ſhe remain'd twelve days without having any thing given her to eat or drink; after that the Chamber

was

was all uncover'd at the top, that the ſun might come at her, and ſcorch her to death, and ſo ſhe di'd in three days. The two Maids that ſerv'd her had a little more favour, for they were thrown to the Elephants, who preſently trod them to death. The two Porters of the Cheſt, or Flasket, were ti'd to four ſmall Galleys, by the two Hands, and two Leggs, and as they Row'd ſeveral ways were preſently diſmembred. Being at *Daca*, in the Kingdom of *Bengala*, I ſaw the ſame Juſtice done to a *Bramerè*, who would have betraid *Cha-Eſt-Can* to the King of *Arachan*.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the Viſits, Feaſts, and Paſtimes of the Tunquineſes.

AMong all the *Eaſtern* People the *Tunquineſes* are the moſt ſociable, and moſt frequently viſit one another. Generally they make their Viſits about Noon, in the hotteſt time of the day, and then every one walks with a Train ſuitable to his Condition. The Princes and *Mandarines* ride upon their Elephants, or elſe they are carri'd in a kind of Litter, where they may either ſit or lie. Six Men carry it, and behind them follow ſix more to eaſe them by times. Their Train conſiſts generally of fifty or ſixty Perſons; neither are they permitted to exceed that number. As for the ordinary Gentry, and Officers of the Court, they ride a Horſe-back, not being allow'd above ſeven or eight Servants to attend them. They chew *Betlè* continually, as all the other *Aſiaticks* do in ſuch places where it is to be had. And when any one comes to viſit another, it would be taken for a great affront, if at his taking leave, he ſhould not be preſented with a Box of *Betlè*, to take what he pleas'd.

The richer that Box is, the more Honour is given to the Perſon to whom the *Betlè* is preſented: Inſomuch that when a Prince is about to be marri'd, he uſually ſends three of theſe Boxes to his Spouſe, of which I have ſeen ſome, at the

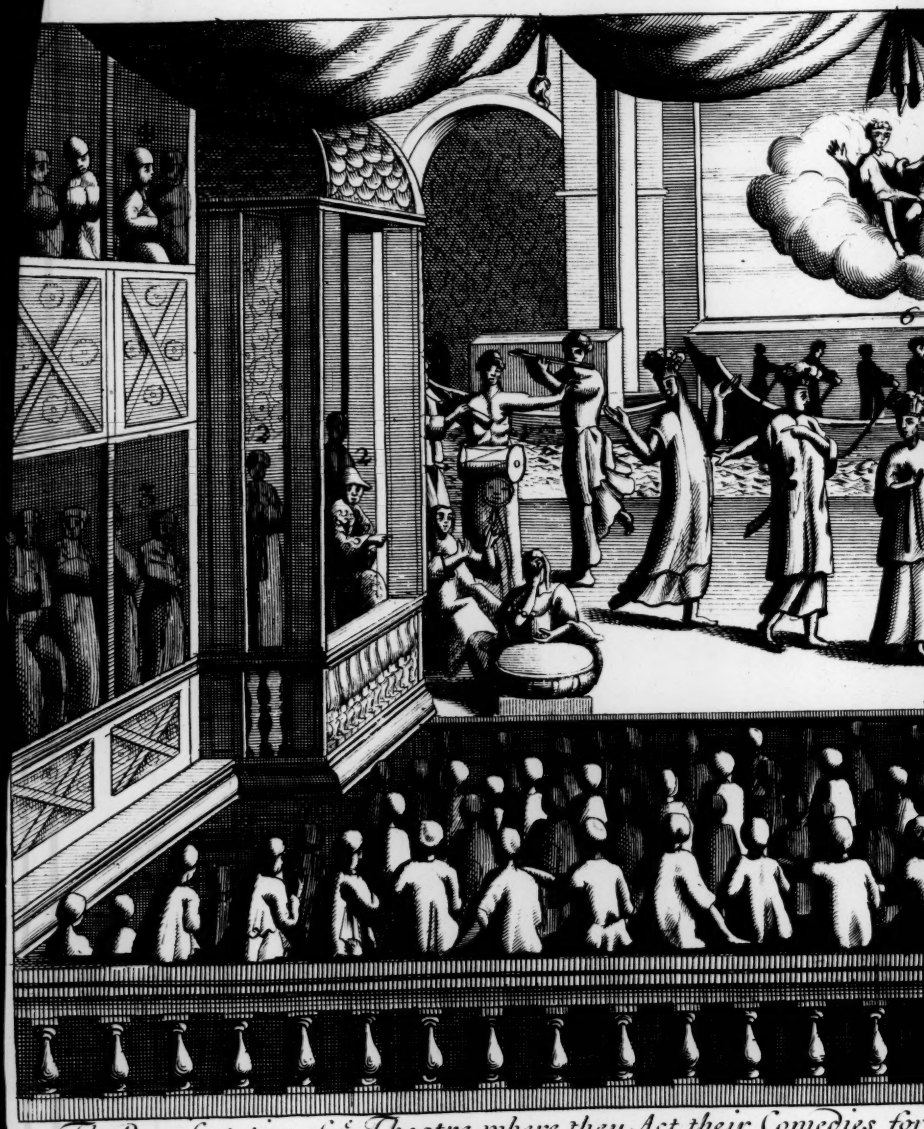
the Apartments of ſome of the Princes that came to the Court of the *Great Mogul*, which were worth above 4 or 500000 *Livres*: One ſhall be cover'd with Diamonds, another with Rubies and Pearls, another with Emraulds and Pearls, or elſe with other Jewels.

The *Tunquineſes* take it for a great diſhonour to have their Heads bare, which is only for Criminals, whom they cauſe to be ſhav'd ſo ſoon as they are taken. So that it is a difficult thing for a Criminal to eſcape the hands of Juſtice, for wherever they go, when they find that a man has no Hair, he is taken and carri'd to the Governour, who cauſes him to be nail'd to a Croſs immediately.

They ſit croſs legg'd, after the manner of the *Aſiatic* People. At great mens Houſes, in the Halls, where they receive their Viſits, there is as it were an *Alcove*, with a kind of a Bedſted rais'd about a foot from the ground. It is cover'd with a very fine Mat, made of little Reeds bound together, as it were with fine thread. For it is not the Cuſtom to ſpread Carpets upon the Floors, as in other Countries of *Aſia*. Not that the deerneſs hinders them from making uſe of them, for theſe Mats coſt them more then a fine *Perſian* or *Indian* Carpet would do, but becauſe they are cooler to ſit upon, and becauſe the *Punies* do not get ſo eaſily into them. Being at *Bantam* I bought one of theſe Mats of a *Tunquineſe*, which was admir'd for its fineneſs. It was nine Ells ſquare, and as even and as ſoft as Velvet. With theſe Mats they cover the Beds or Couches, upon which the *Mandarins*, or *Princes*, and the Nobilty which accompany them, ſeat themſelves round the Chamber, every one having one Cuſhion under him, and another at his Back.

As for their Diet the *Tunquineſes* are not very curious. The Common People are contented with Rice boil'd in water, and dri'd Fiſh, or ſalted Eggs. For as for Fleſh they eat none but at their Feſtivals. The great Lords are ſerv'd every day with Fleſh and Fiſh, but their Cooks know not what belongs to bak'd Meats. Otherwiſe they are more neat in their Kitchins and Chambers then we, only they make no uſe either of Napkins or Table-cloaths. Whatever is ſet before them to eat, is ſerv'd in little Plates, not ſo big as our Trenchers, being made of wood lacker'd with all ſorts of Flow'rs, like the Cabinets which are brought from *Japan*.

All



The Representation of ỹ Theatre where they Act their Comedies for
1. the Kings Box. 2 the box for ỹ two Iudges who preside at ỹ Comedies. 3. & 4. the

ies for the Divertisement of ỹ King of Tunquin and his Court.
4. the Princes Boxes. 5. the Theatre for the Actors. 6. the Machines and decoration

All theſe Plates are brought up, rang'd in order, in a large Voyder, lacker'd like the Plates. Uſually the Voyder holds ten or twelve Plates, and the Meat is cut in little pieces, about the bigneſs of a Hazle Nut. They make uſe neither of Spoons, nor Knives, nor Forks, but only of thoſe little Sticks, of which I have made mention in the foregoing Chapter, never touching their Meat with their fingers.

When there are ſeveral ſitting at the Table, either at their ordinary Meals, or upon ſome Feſtival, they account it a great piece of Manners to be ſilent; or if they have a deſire to Diſcourſe, they alway allow the Eldeſt the honour of beginning, bearing a great reſpect to them that are aged. But the Youngeſt, at the Table, is never permitted to begin the Diſcourſe. They waſh their Hands, their Mouths, and Faces before they ſit down, but never after Meals. And when they deſire to know whether every one has had his fill, they ask him whether he have eaten his Rice, according to the Cuſtom of the Ancient Fathers in Scripture, who, by Bread, meant the whole Repaſt. Neither is it a Cuſtom among them to ask one another how they do? but how many Meaſures of Rice he eat for his Dinner, and whether he eat with an Appetite. This is a general Cuſtom among all the Idolatrous *Indians*, unleſs in the Dominions of the *Great Mogul*, where they eat not Rice only, but Bread, and there they ask in civility how much Rice they boil'd, and how much Meal they bak'd for Bread; for the more he eats, the better in health they think a man is.

Among all the Paſtimes of the *Tunquineſes* there are none wherein they take ſo much delight as in Comedies, which are only Acted in the Night-time; but thoſe which are preſented the day that they firſt behold the new Moon are the beſt. They laſt from Sun-ſetting to Sun-riſing, and they are ſet out with beautiful Decorations and Machines, very pleaſing to behold. They are excellently well skill'd in repreſenting the Sea and Rivers, and making a ſhew of Sea-fights, and Combats between Galleys and Barks, though they have ſeldom more then eight Actors, Men and Women. The places appointed for theſe ſights, are great Halls, the third part whereof the Theater takes up, the reſt being fill'd with Benches for the Spectators. Upon each ſide of the Theater is a Box very ſumptuouſly ſet out, reſerv'd for the King,

King when he pleaſes to come. The Actors and Actreſſes are very magnificently clad. The dreſs for the Womens heads being a kind of Miter or Diadem, which exceedingly becomes them, from the hinder part whereof two Ribonds, three fingers broad, hang down below their waſts. Both the one and the other Act their parts very perfectly, and, according to their manner, obſerve an exact time in their Dancing.

At one of the corners of the Hall ſit the two Judges of the Comedy, one of whom beats time upon a Braſs Drum. Their other ordinary Paſtimes, eſpecially for the Lords and *Mandarins*, are Fiſhing and Hunting, though they take more pleaſure in the former, by reaſon of the plenty of Fiſh which their Rivers afford them. But, as I ſaid before, they follow theſe ſports only upon the days that are permitted them, as being better husbands of their time then we, not ſparing any part of it from buſineſs. So that they who at the beginning of that little knowledge which we had of theſe People, wrote that their Manners and Cuſtoms were wild and barbarous, were miſinform'd. For as there is no reaſon to doubt of the truth of what I affirm, and what others have confirm'd by other Relations, we may well conculde from what I have ſaid, That all the Duties of Civil Society and Politeneſs are not confin'd within our *Europe*; but that the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, anciently a part of *China*, ſtill retains the good Government and Civility of the *Chineſes* themſelves.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Learned Men in the Kingdom of Tunquin.

CErtain it is, that the *Tunquineſes* have a very great inclination for Learning, and that they apply themſelves to their Studies with diligence and ſucceſs: for that they cannot be advanc'd without it to the Offices and Dignities in the Kingdom. I do not here, by Learning, mean the underſtanding of the Languages of our Learned Men

Men of *Europe*, which are altogether unknown to the Eaſtern People, and much leſs the Philoſophy of *Ariſtotle*, of which they never ſo much as heard. But we mean the knowledge of the Laws of their Country, by means whereof they obtain the charges of Judicature; the *Mathematicks*, and particularly *Aſtronomy*, to which all the Orientals have a great inclination, as being great obſervers of the Stars, by whoſe aſſiſtance they flatter themſelves to be able to foretel things to come. The *Tunquineſes* are alſo paſſionate lovers of *Muſic* and *Poetry*, as being great admirers of *Comedy* and *Tragedy*, of which thoſe two Sciences are the main Compoſition; ſo that the Muſicians and Actors of *Tunquin* are accounted the beſt in the whole Eaſtern part of the World.

That you may acquire Nobility by Learning, in your Youth, you muſt paſs through three degrees, of the *Synde*, the *Doucan*, and the *Tanſi*, from which degree you may aſcend to that of the Nobility.

To attain the firſt degree, it behoves the Youth of *Tunquin* to apply themſelves for eight years together to their Studies, and that very cloſe, to enable themſelves for the Office of a Notary, Proctor, and Advocate, to which there is nothing more conducing then to ſpeak Eloquently in public. At the end of eight years, they are examin'd concerning the duty of thoſe Employments; and if any one fail to give an Anſwer to the Queſtions propounded, he is ſent back again as incapable to obtain any Employment for the future, or to ſtudy any longer. For thoſe that acquit themſelves well of their Examination, which is very rigorous, their Names are ſet down in a Regiſter, and preſented to the King, who firſt grants them the liberty to take upon them the Title of *Synde*, and then if it be their aim to enjoy the Quality of *Doucan*, they are commanded by the *Tanſi*'s to ſtudy *Muſic*, *Aſtrology*, and *Poeſie*, not only to be able to be judge of it, but alſo to perform themſelves upon occaſion. For to be good judges of *Comedy*, which is a great Honour among them, it behoves them to be both good Comedians and Muſicians. Nor indeed is there any Paſtime more frequent then that of the Theater in this Country; for there is never any ſolemn Feſtival among them, which is not accompany'd and ſet

forth with Artificial Fire-works, in making whereof theſe People are exquiſite; after which they have their Comedies, with Machines, and change of Scenes in every Act. Beſides this, their Actors have a prodigious memory, ſo that let the part be never ſo long, they never make uſe of Prompters to aſſiſt them, as we do in *Europe*.

They that will learn the *Mathematicks*, muſt make their own Inſtruments themſelves, and ſpend five years in this ſtudy. They are examin'd every year, and if they fail to anſwer ſuch Queſtions as are ask'd them, for the firſt four they are pardon'd; but at the end of the five years, if upon the grand Examination, they fail to anſwer the Queſtions demanded them by the *Tanſi s*, they are utterly degraded; whereas if they ſatisfie their Examinors, they are permitted the Name and Dignity of *Doucan*. After thirteen years thus ſpent, before they can arrive to the degree of a *Tanſi*, they muſt ſpend four years more in learning to write and read the *Chineſe* Character to ſuch a certain number of Words. For the life of a Man would not ſuffice to learn to write and read the *Chineſe* quite through. The reaſon is, becauſe that as to this particular, it is not in *China* as in other Nations, where one Word is compos'd of ſeveral Letters. The *Chineſes* for every Word have a different Figure, all which Figures are very numerous, as you may eaſily conjecture. By the by let me tell you, that theſe Figures are made with ſmall Pencils, and that the *Chineſes* make uſe of a certain Ink, which is made up into a Paſte, and ſo moiſten'd in Water as you make uſe of it. They have alſo another ſort of Colour for certain Words. But they cannot make uſe of Pens, as our *Europeans*, which are made of Quils; nor of thoſe of other Eaſtern People, which are made of ſmall rediſh brown Reeds, the beſt of which grow in certain Merſhes in the Kingdom of *Pegu* and *Arachan*.

But to return to the Students of *Tunquin*, they are alſo oblig'd to underſtand the Laws and Cuſtoms of the *Chineſes*, as well as their own; and the laſt four years being at an end, the laſt and great Examination is made in the great place, within the Encloſure of the Palace of *Tunquin*, which is a ſtately Marble ſtructure. There the King is preſent, with the Princes and great Lords of the Court, the *Mande-*

rins

rins for Learning, and all the *Tanſi's*; and many alſo come on purpoſe from diſtant Provinces to the Solemnity. Some Relations of *Tunquin* have been a little too ridiculous in this particular, aſſerting extravagantly; that ſometimes there are above 30 or 40000 Students preſent at theſe Examinations; but by what I could learn from my Brother, or gather by that diſcourſe which I have had with the Natives, the number of Students never exceeds three thouſand. There are in the place nine Scaffolds ſet up; of which the one is for the King and Princes, the other for the Examiners, and thoſe that are to be Examin'd: And for the better hearing what is ſaid, the Scaffolds are built like an Amphitheater. But whereas there are eight days ſpent in this Examination, the King and the *Mandarins* are never there but only the two firſt days. The laſt day all the Names of them who have been Examin'd, as well they who have anſwer'd well, as of them that have falter'd, are left in the Hands of the ſixteen chief *Manderins*, who are as it were ſixteen Counſellors of State, and then it is at the King's pleaſure to favour whom he thinks fit, of thoſe who have not given full ſatisfaction to the Queſtions propounded to them. As for thoſe who were found very ignorant, they are degraded with ſhame, and there is no more ſaid of them. All thoſe Names are uſually written upon large Tables, ſet up at the Gate of the King's Palace for eight days together, to the end, that all the People may know who are receiv'd into the Rank of *Nobility*, and who not.

The eight days being paſs'd, they are all to appear again upon the ſame Scaffolds, where in the view of all the World, they who have had the misfortune to have falter'd in their Examinations, are diſmiſs'd as unworthy of any Employment: while they who have behav'd themſelves worthy of approbation, are honour'd with a Veſt of Violet Satin, which they preſently put on, and then take upon them the Name of *Tanſi's*. Then they have given them a Liſt of the Towns and Villages, where they are to receive the Rents which the King allows them; wherein however they have not an equal ſhare; ſome being allow'd more, ſome leſs, according to their merit, or the favour of the Prince. Preſently they ſend notice to the places aſſign'd them of the

time, at which they intend to be there: and then all the Inhabitants come forth to meet them, in Honour of their Dignity, with all ſorts of Muſic, and a Guilded *Branquar*, carried by eight Men. There they are permitted to ſtay three Months to divertize themſelves, and for their own recreation. After that they return to Court, to inſtruct themſelves in the affairs of the Kingdom, and the King's Houſe, and to perfect themſelves in the knowledge of thoſe things, which is the way to obtain the Dignity of a *Mandarin*. All Embaſſadours who are ſent to the Princes adjoyning, eſpecially to the *Chineſes*, are choſen out of theſe *Tanſi's*, among whom they always make choice of the ableſt, and not of the richeſt, the King allowing them ſufficient to maintain their Port, and defray the expences of the Embaſſy.

CHAP. X.

Of their Phyſicians, and the Diſeaſes of the Tunquineſes.

THe Phyſicians belonging to the Kingdom of *Tunquin* do not make it their buſineſs much to ſtudy Books; ſpending their Youth in ſearching after the nature and qualities of the Roots and Simples, and how to apply them according to the nature of the Diſtemper. But more particularly they apply themſelves to the beating of the Pulſe, and its diverſity of Meaſure, by which they chiefly pretend to underſtand the cauſe of the Diſeaſe, and what Remedy to make uſe of for cure. And therefore when they go to feel a Pulſe, they feel it in ſeveral parts of the Body; and according to the diverſity of the part, and the beating, they judge of the quality of the Diſtemper. Therefore upon their firſt coming, they feel the Patient in three places, firſt upon their right ſides, and ſecondly upon their left. By the Pulſe which they feel upon the wriſt of the right hand, they gueſs of the condition of the Lungs; by that which they feel upon the Vein of the Arms, where gene-

generally People are let Blood, they gueſs at the Diſtempers of the Stomach, and the Region of the Kidneys. The Pulſe of the left Wriſt diſcovers to them the condition of the Heart: By that in the Veins of the left Arm, where uſually they let Blood, they are inform'd of the eſtate of the Liver. By the Pulſes of the Temples, both right and left, they give a more exquiſite judgment of the Kidneys. They are very careful to count how many times a Pulſe of a ſick Perſon beats in the time of one Reſpiration; and according to theſe ſeveral Pulſes, they tell you which part of the Body is particularly diſtemper'd, whether the Heart, the Liver, or the Lungs; or whether the Diſtemper proceed from any outward cauſe, as from Cold, Sadneſs, or any other diſorderly Paſſion.

They never make uſe of any other Remedies but of Herbs and Roots, which they chooſe themſelves; there being no diſtinction among them of *Apothecary* and *Phyſician*. Theſe Herbs they mingle ſometimes with a little Ginger, which they boyl in Water, and give the Decoction, being ſtrain'd, to the Patient. They have very good Receipts for the Purples, Epilepſie, and ſeveral other Diſeaſes which are accounted incurable in *Europe*. They make uſe of *China* Ink to ſtop a Dyſentery, and for the cure of Wounds. When the Sea Ebbs from the ſhoar upon theſe Coaſts, they find upon the Sand a little ſmall kind of Crabs, which dye immediately, and by the heat of the Sun, which is there extraordinary, become as hard as a Stone in a ſhort time; theſe the *Tunquineſe* Phyſicians beat to Powder, and give to their Patients in Dyſenteries, and Feavers, ſometimes in *Aqua Vitæ*, ſometimes in plain Water. They mightily admire the Herb *Tea*, which comes from *China* and *Japan*; which latter Country produces the beſt. It is brought to them in Tin Pots cloſe ſtop'd, to keep out the Air. When they would uſe it, they boyl a quantity of Water, according to the proportion they intend to uſe, and when the Water ſeeths, throw a ſmall quantity into it, allowing as much as they can nip between their Thumb and fore-Finger to a Glaſs. This they preſcribe to be drank as hot as they can endure it, as being an excellent Remedy againſt the Headach, for the Gravel, and for thoſe that are ſubject to the Griping of the Guts; but then they order a little Ginger

to

to be put into the Water when it boyls. At *Goa*, *Batavia*, and in all the *Indian* Factories, there are none of the *Europeans* who do not ſpend above four or five Leaves a day; and they are careful to preſerve the boyl'd Leaf for an Evening Sallad, with Sugar, Vinegar, and Oyl. That is accounted the beſt *Tea* which colours the Water greeneſt; but that which makes the Water look Red, is little accounted of. In *Japan*. The King and great Lords, who drink *Tea*, drink only the Flower, which is much more wholſom, and of a taſt much more pleaſing. But the Price is much different, for one of our ordinary Beer Glaſſes is there worth a *French* Crown.

The moſt dangeroug Diſtempers that befall the *Tunquineſes*, moſt uſually happen when the bad Air ſurprizes the People; for of a ſudden it deprives them of their Speech, and then Death ſuddenly follows without a ſpeedy Remedy. The beſt Remedy for this ſudden Diſtemper is to mix ſome Counterpoiſon with *Aqua Vitæ* inſtead of Wine, and to let the Patient drink it as hot as he can. The Patient alſo muſt at the ſame time be rub'd with a Cloth dip'd in *Aqua Vitæ*, where Ginger has been boyl'd. This takes away the pains caus'd by cold Winds, and unwholſom Airs. Though ſome for the more ſpeedy cure of theſe pains, lay the Patient upon a Bed made only of Girts, four Fingers diſtant one from the other; and then ſetting a Chafing-diſh underneath, cauſe the ſick Perſon to ſweat in a Cloud of Frankincenſe, till the pain is gone, repeating the ſame thing Morning and Evening.

As for Blood-letting, it is by no means us'd in that Country. They make uſe of Fire, eſpecially for the Purple-Feaver, a Diſeaſe ſo dangerous in *France*. For the cure of this, the Phyſitians of *Tunquin* take the Pith of a Reed, which they dry very well; dip it in Oyl, and ſet it on Fire: and then apply to every Purple Spot one of theſe lighted Wicks. The Spot will give a whif like a ſmall Squib, and that's an infallible ſign that the Venom is gone out of the body. This Remedy is ſeldom apply'd but in the night time, becauſe the Spot does not appear ſo well in the day time. And the Phyſician muſt be very careful, that when this Venom flies out of the Patient's Body, it does not find a way into his own; for then there is no Remedy

but

but Death. There are ſome Phyſicians that will prick the Purple Spot with a Needle, and let out the Peſtilential Blood; after which they burn the part ſo prick'd, and then rub it with Ginger, not permitting their Patient to take the Air in 20 days after they are cur'd. While they are under cure, they drink nothing but Water, with Citron-peel boyl'd in it, and abſtain from Fleſh and Butter. They give them to eat Rice boyl'd in Water, and ſalt Fiſh; but the more they abſtain from eating and drinking, the ſooner they are cur'd. And indeed it is a wonderful thing to ſee the excellent effects of their Remedies in ſo ſhort a time; for they have no lingring Diſtempers to hold them years together, as they do among us.

CHAP. XI.

Of the Original, Government, and Policy, of the Kingdom of Tunquin.

IT is not above ſix hundred years ſince *Tunquin* was firſt govern'd by particular Kings, in regard it was anciently a part of the Dominion of the *Chineſes*. What is reported of the firſt *Tunquineſes*, That they were without Governours, and without Kings, is altogether fabulous, like to that which is related of a certain Infant of three years of Age, who appearing before a great Aſſembly of the People, exhorted them to free themſelves from the power of the *Chineſes*, who were their Oppreſſors. Upon which a lovely Horſe miraculouſly appearing to the ſaid Infant, he mounted the Horſe, and immediately ſetting forward with thoſe that were gather'd after him, as alſo others that appear'd as wonderfully to aſſiſt him, he ſet upon the *Chineſes*, and defeated them in ſuch manner, that they never durſt venture after that to return any more to reconquer what they had loſt. But the moſt certain truth of *Tunquin* Hiſtory aſſures us, That for theſe ſix Centuries laſt paſt, it has been govern'd by ſix various Families. The firſt that aſſum'd the Title of King was a famous Robber, whoſe Name

Name was *Din*, who having gather'd together a great Number of Malecontents, and Vagabonds, became ſo powerful and formidable through his own Valour, that after ſeveral bloody Battels gain'd, it was no difficult thing for him to ſeize upon the Throne. But he did not reign long in peace, for the moſt part of the People rebell'd againſt him; and in the firſt Battel that he fought, he loſt his Life. However his own Party won the day; and having left two Sons, his eldeſt reigned three years; after whoſe death, the younger Brother rul'd in his ſtead, but dy'd ſoon after, neither of the Brothers leaving any iſſue behind them. After that the Kingdom was miſerably diſtracted by ſeveral Civil Wars, till the weaker Party calling in the *Chineſes* to their Aſſiſtance, became the moſt puiſſant. Then it was that a certain *Mandarin*, of the Family of *Lelequel*, was advanc'd to the Throne, who being a valiant and prudent Prince, reſtor'd tranquillity to the whole Kingdom. Who, when he ſaw himſelf Eſtabliſh'd in peace, built that large Palace, which they, who have ſeen it, admire, as well for it's Circuit, as for its magnificent Structure, being all of Marble of divers Colours, both within and without. This King had but one Daughter, who ſoon after her Father's death, the better to ſecure her ſelf, marry'd one of the moſt powerful *Mandarins* in the Country, of the Houſe of *Tran*. But ſoon after, one of her Subjects rebelling againſt her, gave her battel, took her Priſoner, and put her to death. Having thus got the Power into his hands, the Rebel uſurp'd the Throne; but nine years after, he was alſo ſlain in Battel by his own Subjects, who had call'd the *Chineſes* to their Aſſiſtance. They being thus Maſters of the Kingdom, held it for twenty years, and ſet Governours over every Province. But at length the *Mandarins* grew weary of their Oppreſſion, becauſe of the heavy Tributes which they laid upon the *Tunquineſes*; ſo that a valiant Captain of the Houſe of *Le*, having aſſembled a numerous Power together, gave the *Chineſes* three Battels, and in every one overcame them. The *Chineſes* thus expell'd out of *Tunquin*, the Conquerour ſeiz'd the Crown, and in his Family the Regal Government continu'd for above four-ſcore years. After which time, a great Lord, of the Family of *Marr*, which had formerly enjoy'd the Scepter,

to

to Revenge himſelf of an affront which the King had put upon him at Court, found a way to eſcape his hands, and being aſſiſted by a great Number of diſcontented Perſons, of which the beſt regulated Kingdoms are always full, and the *Chineſes*, who always ſought an opportunity to regain what they had loſt, after a bloody Battel, he poſſeſs'd himſelf of the Kingdom, it being never known what became of his Predeceſſor. But this new King enjoy'd the Fruits of his Victory but a ſmall while. For two years afterwards, a *Mandarin*, of the Houſe of *Trin*, having eſpous'd the Daughter of another great Lord, openly declar'd War againſt his Soveraign, with a deſign utterly to extirpate the Houſe of *Marr*. Unhappily for him, death put a ſtop to his deſigns, though he left two Sons behind him, able enough to have purſu'd his undertakings. But the eldeſt, naturally timorous, and fearing to engage himſelf in a dangerous War, voluntarily ſubmitted himſelf to the King, who gave him the Government of a Province, and marry'd him to one of his Siſter's Daughters. The younger Brother being a valiant Prince, and having his deceaſed Father's Army at his Devotion, though the King propos'd him great advantages, would give ear to nothing, but out of his ambition to Reign himſelf continu'd and ſucceſsfully accompliſh'd what his Father had begun. In the ſecond Battel which he gave the King, who was there in perſon, he took him Priſoner, together with his Brother, who had ſubmitted to him, and ſome few days after he put them both publicly to death at the head of his Army; the one as an unjuſt uſurper of the Throne; the ether as a deſertor, who had abandon'd his Father's Army, and ſo ill follow'd his intentions.

Now though as Victor he might eaſily have aſcended the Throne, and tak'n upon him the Name and Title of King, yet he would not accept of any higher Title then that of General of the Army; and the better to Eſtabliſh himſelf in his Authority, and to gain the affection of the People, he caus'd Proclamation to be made through all the Provinces of the Kingdom, that if there were any Prince of the Houſe of *Le* yet remaining alive, he ſhould ſhew himſelf, with full aſſurance that upon his appearing, he ſhould be put into poſſeſſion of the Kingdom. There was but one to be found,

who had been ſo cloſely purſu'd by the Houſe of *Marr*, while it rul'd, that to ſave his Life he was forc'd to abſcond himſelf in the Frontiers of the Kingdom, under the Habit of a private Soldier. The General was overjoy'd to find that there was yet a lawful Heir of the Houſe of *Le* to be found, that he might place him upon the Throne. So that ſo ſoon as he was known to be of the Legitimate Race, all the Equipage and Attendance of a King was ſent to him, with Order to all the Provinces as he paſs'd along, to receive him as if he were already crown'd. The whole Army march'd two days march to meet the King, and brought him to *Checo*, the capital City of the Kingdom, where he was plac'd in the Throne of his Father, and with great Pomp proclaim'd King of *Tunquin*. But General *Trin*, who car'd not ſo much for the Royal Title, as the Royal Power, ſo order'd his buſineſs, that leaving to *Le* all the outward ſhew and Pomp of Royal Authority, he reſerv'd to himſelf the whole command of the Army, and the greateſt part of the Revenues of the Kingdom abſolutely to diſpoſe of at his own pleaſure. So that from that time to this hour, we may affirm that there has been, and ſtill are, two Kings of *Tunquin*, of which the firſt has only the Name and Title of King, and is call'd *Boüa*, and the ſecond *Choüa*, who has all the Authority, diſpoſing of all things at his pleaſure, while the other remains ſhut up in his Palace like a Slave, not permitted to ſtir abroad but upon certain days: and then he is carry'd through the Streets of *Checo*, like an Image, though with a magnificent Train and Royal Equipage. He has generally 2000 Soldiers for his Guard; and ſometimes 20000 which are quarter'd upon the Frontiers, chiefly toward *Cochinchina*. He alſo has ready upon the Frontiers 50 Elephants for War. And upon the Rivers of the Kingdom where the Enemy can come to damage him, he uſually keeps 100 great Galleys, with a vaſt company of ſmall Galliots, to which the Soldiers and Rowers that belong, have more pay then the others at Land. And theſe, that they may row with more ſtrength, row ſtanding, with their Faces toward the Prow, quite contrary to our Rowers, who turn their backs.

The King gives public Audience almoſt every day; but he makes no Edict, or public Decree, that is of any effect,

if

if it be not alſo Sign'd by the *Choüa*. At theſe Audiences he has with him thirty two Councellors of State, and beſides theſe, a hundred others to judge of all Appeals of the Kingdom. The Eunuchs have a very great Power at Court, as in all other Courts of *Aſia*, and the King, as to his moſt important affairs, confides more in them then in his own Children. The eldeſt Children do not always ſucceed their Father; for the *Choüa*, or General, with all the Councellors, which are generally his Creatures, thought it convenient, that when the King ſhould have more Sons then one, he ſhould make choice of whom he pleas'd to ſucceed him. So that ſo ſoon as he has nam'd him, the *Choüa*, attended by the principal Officers of the Army, Councellors of State, and Eunuchs, come to congratulate him, and to give him their Oaths to ſet him upon the Throne after the death of his Father; and for the other Brothers they are always ſhut up in the Palace, as in a Priſon, without medling with any affairs of State. They never ſtir out of the Palace but four times a year, and they never ſtay abroad above ſix days at a time, the Officers that attend them being put upon them by the *Choüa*, who is as it were Lord high Conſtable of the Kingdom. The firſt of theſe ſix days of liberty they go to viſit the Temples, and the Prieſts, to whom they give large Alms; the two next days they take their pleaſure in hunting; and the three laſt days they ſpend their time upon the Rivers, in Galleys ſumptuouſly trimm'd and adorn'd.

The Kingdom of *Tunquin* is divided into eight large Provinces, every one of which has its Governour, and its Magiſtrates, from whoſe ſentence there lies an Appeal to the Court. We ſhould wrong this Country to ſay that there were no Nobility therein; as indeed there are none in moſt Kingdoms of *Aſia*. But they muſt all attain to this degree their merit; ſome by the Warrs, and ſome by their Learning. They who attain their Nobility by Arms, have wherewithall to live handſomly at home; and they begin to learn their Exerciſes betimes, at fartheſt by eleven or twelve years of Age. The firſt thing they are to underſtand, is how to handle their Swords; the Blades of which are ſtreight, long, and broad, like thoſe of the *Switzers*, having but one Edge. They are alſo taught to aim with their Bows;

and to fire a Musket with Matches, (for they know not the uſe of Fire-Locks) to ride the great Horſe, to ſhoot running, and to manage their *Zagay's*, which are a ſort of Staves, cheek'd with Iron, like a Half-Pike. When they are ready in all theſe Exerciſes, then they learn to make all ſorts of Artificial Fire-works; as alſo how to invent new ones, to make uſe of them againſt the Elephants. By the way I muſt needs tell you, there are ſome of theſe Elephants as I have ſeen ſeveral times, that are ſo accuſtom'd to theſe Artificial Fires, that they regard them not at all, neither are any way diſturb'd at the Squibs that are thrown, and go off under their very Noſes and Bellies. Nevertheleſs of 200 of theſe Creatures which the Eaſtern Kings carry to their Wars at a time, you ſhall have hardly fifteen that are ſo hardy and valiant. So that unleſs their Governours take not great care, inſtead of running upon the Enemy, they turn upon their Friends, and put the whole Army into a moſt diſmal confuſion; as you ſhall hear by the following Story. For *Aurenge-Zebe*, the preſent *Great Mogul*, being then a young Prince, obtain'd of *Cha-gehan*, his Father, to let him have the command of an Army of threeſcore thouſand Men, and fourſcore Elephants; and with this force, out of his Antipathy to the Chriſtians, he laid Siege to *Daman*, a Town belonging to the *Portugals*, fourteen Leagues from *Surat*. The Governour was a perſon of great Valour, and had alſo two Sons with him, who, together with himſelf, had both ſerv'd the King of *France*. He had alſo in the Town eight hundred Gentlemen, who voluntarily put themſelves into the Garriſon for its defence, from all parts of *India* where the *Portugueſes* had to do, and were all excellently well mounted. For the *Portugals* at that time made uſe of none but *Arabian* Horſes, the worſt of which coſt a thouſand Crowns at leaſt. The Governour finding that the *Indian* Prince began to preſs hard upon him, having already made two Aſſaults, reſolv'd with all his Cavalry and Infantry to make a Salley upon *Sunday* Morning, cauſing them to fix at the ends of their Spears and Lances certain Artificial Fire-works, to which they were order'd ſuddenly to give fire, as ſoon as they ſhould gain the Elephants Quarter. This deſign was ſo ſucceſsful, that when it came to be executed, the Elephants were ſo ſuddenly terrifi'd,

terrifi'd, that running impetuouſly through the *Indian* Army, they trod to the ground, and cut in pieces with the Swords and Scithes which were faſten'd to their Trunks, what ever ſtood in their way. The *Portugals* taking advantage of this confuſion, made no leſs havock among the amazed Multitude, whom they had ſurpriz'd ſecurely and profoundly aſleep. For they had an opinion, that the *Portugals* would never attack them upon the Sabboth day, believing they had the ſame veneration for that day which the *Jews* had. But they were utterly deceiv'd, in ſo much that the *Portugals*, by virtue of this Stratagem ſo cloſely purſu'd, obtain'd a notable Victory, to the utter deſtruction of 20000 of *Aurenge-Zebe*'s Army, the ſpoils whereof are reported to have amounted to above twelve Millions.

But to return to the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, I muſt tell you, that the *Tunquineſes* have often wag'd War againſt the *Chineſes*; becauſe the firſt would not pay the latter the Tribute which was accorded them by a Treaty made by one of their Kings, of the Houſe of *Le*. But in the year 1667, the *Chineſes*, ſeeing that the *Tartars* had made themſelves Maſters of their Country, made a Peace with the *Tunquineſes*, wherein it was agreed, that the ſaid Tribute ſhould be no longer paid; but that they ſhould every year ſend an Embaſſador only to *Pequin*, to do homage to the Emperour of *China*.

As for their Juſtice and Policy, they obſerve a very exact Order and Regulation over all the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, as well in their Cities, as in the Country. So that few of the beſt regulated Kingdoms exceed them. More eſpecially they have a great care, for the public good, to repair the Bridges and High-ways; and every quarter of a League there is ſuch Proviſion made, that any Traveller may there meet not only with Water, but Fire alſo to light his Pipe, being generally great ſmoakers of Tobacco.

As for Murder, they are very exact in puniſhing that crime. For they carry the Perſon apprehended before the Judge; and then he muſt hold to his Mouth a little wiſp of Graſs, to ſhew, that by his diſorderly life he had made himſelf a Beaſt. Not much unlike this is the cuſtom in *Perſia*, where the King and his Council condemn or pardon all but ſuch as have murder'd a Man that has any Kindred. For then all the favour that the King can ſhew him is, to deliver

deliver him into the hands of the next of kin to the Perſon kill'd, who has power to agree with the Criminal for a Sum of Money, which is rarely done, as being accounted an Act both infamous and ignominious. So that if there be no agreement made, then it behoves the next of kin to be the Executioner himſelf, and put the Criminal to that death to which he is before condemn'd.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Court of the Kings of Tunquin.

ALthough the King, as I have already ſaid, have not much Authority in his Kingdom, which is govern'd altogether by the General, who has the whole *Militia* at his Devotion, yet he is highly honour'd by his Subjects, and he keeps a very ſplendid Court. The firſt and fifteenth day of every Month, all the *Mandarins* who are the Grandees of the Kingdom, are bound to come in their *Chineſe* Habits to kiſs the King's hands. The Conſtable, or General, was formerly wont to perform the ſame Office, but by degrees he has obtain'd a diſpenſation, and only ſends another Prince in his ſtead. As for all the other *Mandarins*, Governours of Provinces, Juſticiaries, and Military Officers, every year they go to kiſs the *Choüa's* hands, and to congratulate him upon the firſt day of the year, which is the fifteenth of the fifth Month; as alſo when he has obtain'd any great Victory over his Enemies. So that the General has more Honour done him then the King himſelf. 'Tis alſo the cuſtom of the *Tunquineſes*, among the Men, that when they meet any Perſon higher in condition then themſelves, they make four profound obeyſances to the very Earth. But for the Women, what ever their condition be among themſelves, they never make but one. They who are deſirous to be admitted into the Palace to ſee the King, are oblig'd to put on Violet Robes, and their Servants muſt be clad in the ſame colour. They that approach the King's preſence to obtain any favour, muſt

carry

carry a Preſent along with him. For though the Conſtable be the perſon that diſpoſes of all Offices and Commands over all the Court and Kingdom, yet every year upon the fifteenth day of the ſeventh Month, the King diſtributes ſeveral conſiderable Gifts and Largeſſes to his Courtiers; as alſo to the Children of ſuch Fathers who have perform'd any important Service for the good of his Kingdom. He gives them Pains of Gold, every one worth ſix hundred *Livres*; and Bars of Silver, amounting each to forty ſix *Livres*. The ſame day he alſo releaſes all Priſoners, both Criminal and Debtors, provided the crime do not deſerve death; and that the debt do not exceed two Bars of Silver. Alſo every year, the three laſt days of the laſt Month, the 40 *Mandarins*, who are the chief Councellors of State, take the Oaths of all the Lords and Officers of the Court, and of their Wives; cauſing them to ſwear to be faithful to the King, and if they know of any thing that concerns the King's perſon, or his Kingdom, to diſcover it. All Governours of Provinces give the ſame Oaths to the Lords and Gentlemen under their Juriſdictions; and the Governours of Cities to the Citizens, and other Inhabitants. They that diſcover any Treaſon never fail of any reward; only with this diſtinction, in reference to the quality of the Perſons that reveal it. For as for the *Mandarins* and Gentlemen, the King rewards them according to his own pleaſure: But as for the meaner ſort, whether Men or Women, they are ennobl'd, and gratifi'd with a reward of 50 Pains of Gold, and 500 Bars of Silver, which in all amounts to 53000 *Livres*. But they eſteem their Nobility far beyond their Money.

At certain times of the year, there is a Muſter of the Youth of the ſeveral Provinces; and all thoſe who are found not to be either of the Nobility, or not to have learnt any Trade, are preſently enroll'd for the Service of the King, who every five years make choice of ſuch as he intends for his Guard, and ſends them to the Frontier Garriſons. There are ſome who endeavour to get off by Money; but if they be diſcover'd, both the Officers and the Soldier are puniſh'd without redemption. For they hang a little Bell about his Neck, Fetter his Arms, and in that poſture ſend him to the Conſtable, who preſently orders his Head

to be ſtruck off. But in regard the *Tunquineſes* are very averſe from ſeeing any Blood ſhed, the Kindred or Friends of the condemn'd Perſon, intercede that he may be hang'd, believing that death to be moſt honourable which is not defil'd with Blood-ſhed; wherein they ſeem to be of the Opinion of the *Turks*.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the Ceremonies obſerv'd when the Kings of Tunquin *are advanc'd to the Throne.*

BEfore we ſpeak of the Enthroning the Kings of *Tunquin*, and of the Ceremonies that attend it, it behoves us to relate the manner of their ſetting out of the Palace, when they go at any time to take their pleaſure. The King is ſeated upon a moſt magnificent *Palanquin*, carry'd by eight Men, where he may be beheld by all the People; the Lords and Officers of the Court attending him on foot, provided he do not go out of the City: for when he goes into the Country he rides upon an Elephant, and the Lords follow him on Horſe-back. When the Queen Mother, or his firſt Wife go abroad, they are likewiſe carry'd upon a cloſe *Palanquin*, with Lattice-Windows, to the end, they may ſee and not be ſeen; and behind the *Palanquin* follow the Maids of Honour on foot.

The *Mandarins*, and great Princes, ſolemnize their Birth-days every year, with great Feaſting, Paſtimes, Comedies, and Fire-works, and all their Friends and Kindred fail not to attend them to honour the Solemnities. In the year 1645, the eldeſt Son of the King, who was by his Father appointed for his Succeſſor, upon one of his Birth-days ſhew'd the Court all the divertizements he could imagin, and the King who had a great affection for him, ſent him a thouſand Pains of Gold, and five hundred Bars of Silver, to the value of 120000 *Livres*. At which time, large Alms are diſtributed, eſpecially to poor Widows and Priſoners.

When

When the King dies, and leaves ſeveral Sons, they ſet up him whom (when alive) he choſe for his Succeſſor. The third day after the Deceaſe of the King, the Conſtable with all the Military *Mandarins*, the Lords of the Council, and all the Governours of Provinces, repair to the Prince's Appartment, where they preſent him with a *Chineſe* Habit, after which having mounted him upon an Elephant, they bring him into one of the great Courts of his Palace, which is all covered with Cloth of Gold and Silver as with a Tent. There it is, that being placed upon a Throne magnificently enrich'd, all the *Mandarins* proſtrate themſelves upon the Earth with their Heads downward; in which poſture having lain for ſome time, they riſe, and cloſing their Hands together, with their Arms and Eyes lifted up to Heaven, they ſwear to the new King to be faithful to him till death. This firſt Ceremony being over, the new King, to ſhew himſelf liberal upon his firſt coming to the Crown, cauſes four Panes of Gold, and ſix Bars of Silver, to be given to every one. But to diſtinguiſh the Conſtable from the reſt, he gives him twenty Panes of Gold, and forty Bars of Silver: and to the Preſident of the Council or Chancellour ten of Gold and twenty of Silver. Theſe Preſents being thus made, ſeveral Pieces of Artillery are fired round the Palace, accompanied with ſeveral Volleys of ſmall Shot, there being then in Arms above 30000 Horſe and Foot; and then the King is ſet upon a magnificent *Palanquin*, and the Conſtable and chief of the Council ride before upon lovely Horſes. Sixteen of the principal Officers of the Court carry the King, *viz.* eight Military *Mandarins*, and eight of the Council. And in this manner they ſet forward to the Apartment of the deceaſed King, from whence all the Lords retire for two hours, except the Eunuchs; and then it is, that the Princeſſes, Ladies of the Court, and chief Wives of the *Mandarins*, come to kiſs the King's Hand, and congratulate his Advancement to the Throne. Which done, all the Lords return again to a noble Feaſt after the manner of the Countrey ready prepar'd. Their Viands are not ſo delicate, nor ſo deliciouſly dreſs'd as ours, neither have they ſo much variety. 'Tis true, they have thoſe *Birds-neſts*, already mention'd, which they mix in the moſt part of their Diſhes, which gives the Meat a taſt of

almoſt all ſorts of Spices. Of all the Meats which they eat Colts Fleſh is in moſt eſteem, and Dogs Fleſh, neither of which agree with our Palates. The Feſtival is concluded with Comedies and Fireworks, which la allſt the night. The next day the 30000 Men that gave their Volleys of ſmall Shot the day before, are drawn up in good order in a Field next, and all the principal Officers of War, Colonels, Captains, and Lieutenants, leave the Frontiers to be at the ſame place. Then the King mounted upon his *Palanquin*, and carried by ſixteen of his principal Officers, the Conſtable and grand Squire riding before, and attended by ſeveral other Commanders on foot, with ſeveral Mummers that play and dance before the *Pallanquin*, goes forth of his Palace, the Drums, Trumpets, Cornets, and other Warlike Inſtruments, filling the Air with their Martial Sounds. In this Pomp, and with this Equipage, the King being come to the Camp, quits his *Palanquin*, and mounts one of his great Elephants of War, which are us'd to the noiſe of the Guns and ſight of the Fireworks. Being thus mounted, he rides into the middle of all his Troops, in which place all the Officers ſwear Fidelity to him; after which he beſtows his Gifts upon them, to every Colonel two Panes of Gold, and forty Bars of Silver; to every Captain the half of what he gives a Colonel, and to every Lieutenant the half of what he gives a Captain: and as for the Souldiers, they have every one a Moneths Pay. Theſe Preſents being made, the whole Army diſcharges three Volleys, and then every Company retreats into a large Hutt, where they have Meat and Drink prepar'd for them, enough to ſerve them a whole day and a night. In the ſame Field is alſo ſet up a fair wooden Palace, ſumptuouſly enriched within with Paintings and ſeveral pieces of Workmanſhip in Gold. There the King ſpends all the night, ſome part in Feaſting, ſome part in Plays and ſeeing the Mummers dance, and the reſt in beholding the Fireworks. The next day the King leaves his wooden Palace, which is afterwards fir'd by the Souldiers, as well as their own Hutts, and ſo returns to the City. Being arrived at his Palace with the ſame pomp that he went forth, he ſeats himſelf upon his Throne, and there ſhews his Liberality to thoſe that made the Fireworks, to the Comedians and Dancers, and all the reſt that were any way contributary,

tributory to the ſetting forth the Pomp of the Ceremony. Then he gives Acceſs to all the People, and two Commiſſioners, one for the Merchants, and the other for the Handicrafts, make a Speech to the King, the ſubſtance whereof is, that all the Burgeſſes and Inhabitants of the good City of *Checo* do acknowledge him for their King, and that they will be faithful to him till death. The Speech being ended, the King preſents the Body of the Merchants with 50 Panes of Gold, and 300 Bars of Silver; and the Body of the Tradeſmen with 20 Panes of Gold, and 100 Bars of Silver. The People gone home, every one ſtrives who ſhall ſpend moſt in Feaſting and Comedies, adding of their own to the Kings Bounty; ſo that every Quarter of the City is full of Jollity and Rejoycing for a week together. Some days after come the Commiſſioners for the Commonalty, from all parts of the Kingdom, who in the behalf of their Cities and Towns make known to His Majeſty the univerſal Joy of the People for their lawful Prince, aſſuring him of their Fidelity, and of their Service againſt the *Chineſes*. They name particularly the *Chineſes*, becauſe the *Tunquineſes* have no greater Enemies than they, and for that the Hatred between them is irreconcileable. The King obſerving the good will of his People, teſtifies his Acknowledgment in this manner: All that have not time out of mind been Rebels to their lawful Sovereigns, but have conſtantly taken up Arms for their Defence, are diſcharged for a year from all Taxes and Impoſitions; and for the reſt, who have at any time formerly aſſiſted the Enemy, they are onely exempted for ſix moneths. All Priſoners for Debt partake alſo of the King's Bounty, ſo that after the Preſident of the Council has made a Compoſition with the Creditors for half the Summe, the King pays the reſt.

It is a thing almoſt incredible, what a vaſt number of Sacrifices the King ſends to the Temples of his falſe Gods, to be there offer'd to the Idols.

The number of Beaſts is ſaid to exceed an hundred thouſand, beſides the value of a million in Panes of Gold, Tiſſues, and Silks, to adorn the Idols, and Orange-coloured Calicuts for the *Bonzes*, and thoſe that attend the Service of the *Pagods*. Among the reſt of theſe Preſents he ſends a vaſt number of Pieces of blue Calicuts for the poor people that are

kept in the *Pagods*, as our Poor are kept in Hoſpitals. The Idolatrous Princes alſo conſume incredible Summes to adorn the *Pagods* and Images of their falſe Gods. There are ſome of them three foot high, all of maſſy Gold; others of Silver bigger than the Life.

The new King after all theſe Ceremonies are over, takes his time to go and give thanks to his falſe Deities for his coming to the Crown when the Moon firſt changes, ſhutting himſelf up for the firſt week with the *Bonzes*, and living in common with them with a great deal of Frugality.

During this time he viſits the principal Hoſpitals, to ſee how the poor people are us'd, eſpecially the old Folks, whom they have in great Veneration, to whom he diſtributes new Alms; for naturally the *Tunquineſes* are very charitable. To conclude, he makes choice of ſome fair Situation, where he orders the building of a new *Pagod*, which he devotes to ſome of his Idols. Thus his Devotion being ended, upon the firſt day of the ſecond Quarter, he mounts one of his Elephants of War, attended by all the Officers of his Court on Horſe-back, and ten or twelve thouſand men on foot, choſen out of the whole Army to attend him. All the ſecond Quarter the whole Court ſtays in a certain Plain, where are three Houſes ſet up, one for the King, one for the Conſtable, and one for the Preſident of the Council; with a world of Huts for the reſt. There are alſo ſeveral ſmall Cabins ſet up, which are not covered and cloſed but upon one ſide, which they turn as the Wind blows; and theſe are the places where they dreſs their Victuals: For at that time the King allows two meals a day to all his Attendants.

Through this Plain runs the River of ——— which is very broad in that place. Upon this River are ſeveral Galleys richly gilded and painted, but eſpecially the Admiral, which exceeds all the reſt in Magnificence. The Prow, the Poop, the Ropes, the Oars, but onely that part which goes into the water, glitter all with Gold; the Benches very ingeniouſly painted, the Rowers well clad. For there the Rowers are all Souldiers and Freemen, contrary to the Cuſtom in *Europe*. The Souldiers in their youth are taught to handle their Oars, and have ſomewhat better Pay than the Land-Souldiers. The Galleys are not ſo big as

ours,

ours, but they are longer, and cut the water better. While the King ſtays in this place, he diverts himſelf with ſeeing theſe Galleys row one againſt another. In the Evening the Rowers come aſhoar with their Captains to kiſs the King's Hand, and they that have behav'd themſelves moſt ſtoutly and nimbly, carry off the Marks of his Bounty. The ſeven days being paſt, the King calls before him all the Souldiers of the Galleys with their Officers, and gives them two moneths Wages extraordinary, as he does to his Land-Souldiers. 'Tis a wonderful thing to behold the vaſt number of Fireworks which they throw about, as well upon the Land as upon the Water. For my Brother, who has been preſent at all theſe Shews, has told me, that for theſe ſeven days together you would think the Air and Water all on fire. Being at *Bantam* I once ſaw one of theſe artificial Firework-Shews which the *Tunquineſes* that were there plaid off before the King, and I muſt confeſs it was quite another thing from what we make in *Europe*.

The ſeven days being paſt, the King returns to the City in the ſame order, and with the ſame pomp, as he went forth; and being come to his Palace, he goes directly to the Apartment of his Princeſſes, where none but his Eunuchs accompany him, where he ſtays all the reſt of the moneth. Every Evening he diverts himſelf with new Fireworks, which are plaid off before the Womens Lodgings; where alſo the Eunuchs, together with the Comedians and Mummers, contribute to diverti'e the Ladies.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Funeral Pomp of the Kings of Tunquin, *and of their manner of Burying their Dead.*

WHen the King of *Tunquin* dies, he is preſently Embalm'd and laid in a Bed of State, where for ſixty five days the People have liberty to come and ſee him. All that time he is ſerv'd as he was when he was alive; and when the Meat is taken from before the Body, one half is given to the *Bonzes*, and the other half to the Poor. So ſoon as the King hath breath'd his laſt gaſp, the Conſtable gives notice thereof to the Governours of Provinces, and orders them how long they ſhall Mourn.

All the Military *Mandarins* and Judges wear Mourning generally three years, the King's Houſhold nine moneths, the Nobility ſix, and the meaner ſort three moneths. During theſe three years there is a Ceſſation from all Divertiſements, except thoſe that attend the Ceremony of the King's Advance or Elevation to the Throne. All the Viands which are ſerv'd up to the King are verniſh'd with Black. The King cuts his Hair, and covers his Head with a Bonnet of Straw, as do likewiſe all the Princes and Counſellors of State; neither do they leave off that Habit till the King's Body be in the Galley which is to carry him to his Enterment. Three Bells which hang in one of the Towers of the Palace, never leave tolling from the King's expiring till the Corps be put into the Galley. The third day after his Deceaſe all the *Mandarins* repair to Court, to teſtifie their ſorrow which they have for the Death of the deceaſed King, and ten days after that the People are allowed to ſee the Body lie in State, till it be put into the Galley.

During the ſixty five days that the Body is thus expos'd, the Conſtable is buſie in preparing for the Funeral Pomp. From the Palace to the place where the Galleys wait for the Body, it is about two days Journey, and all the way

ſpread

The Order obſerv'd in the March of the Funeral Pomp at the Interment of the Kings of *Tunquin*.

1. *Two Meſſengers of the Chamber proclaim the deceaſed King's Name; each of them bears a Mace, the Head whereof is full of combuſtible ſtuff for Artificial Fire or Fuſées.*

2. *Next proceed Twelve Elephants; on each of the four foremoſt is one bearing the King's Standard. Then follow four other Elephants, with Wooden Turrets on their Backs, and in every one of theſe are Six Men, ſome being armed with Muſquets, others with Fire Lances. The four laſt Elephants do ſeverally carry a kind of Cage; ſome of which are on all ſides ſhut up with Glaſs Windows, the other with a ſort of Grates; the firſt being of a Square, the other having ſix ſides and facing.*

3. *Then rides the Maſter of the Horſe, attended with two Pages on Horſe-back.*

4. *Twelve Horſes are led by the Bridle two and two, by as many Captains of the Guard. The Harneſs of the firſt Six Horſes is very rich, the Bit, and all the Furniture of the Bridle and Saddle are of pure Gold, the Saddles are embroydered likewiſe with Gold: But the Six other Horſes Harneſs is all cover'd over with Gold Plates.*

5. *The Chariot which bears the* Mauſolee, *wherein is the King's Corps, is dragged by Eight Stags trained to this Service. Each of theſe Stags is led by a Captain of the Life Guard.*

6. *Then follows the new King afoot clad in White Satten, with a Straw Cap on his Head. If he hath any Brothers, they attend on him in the like Attire; and they are ſurrounded with Muſicians and Players on the* Hoboys, *and other Inſtruments.*

7. *There proceeds afterwards Six Princeſſes in White Satten, who carry Meat and Drink for the deceaſed King. Theſe are attended*

tended by two Ladies of Honour in Purple Garments; and about these Ladies are several Musicians.

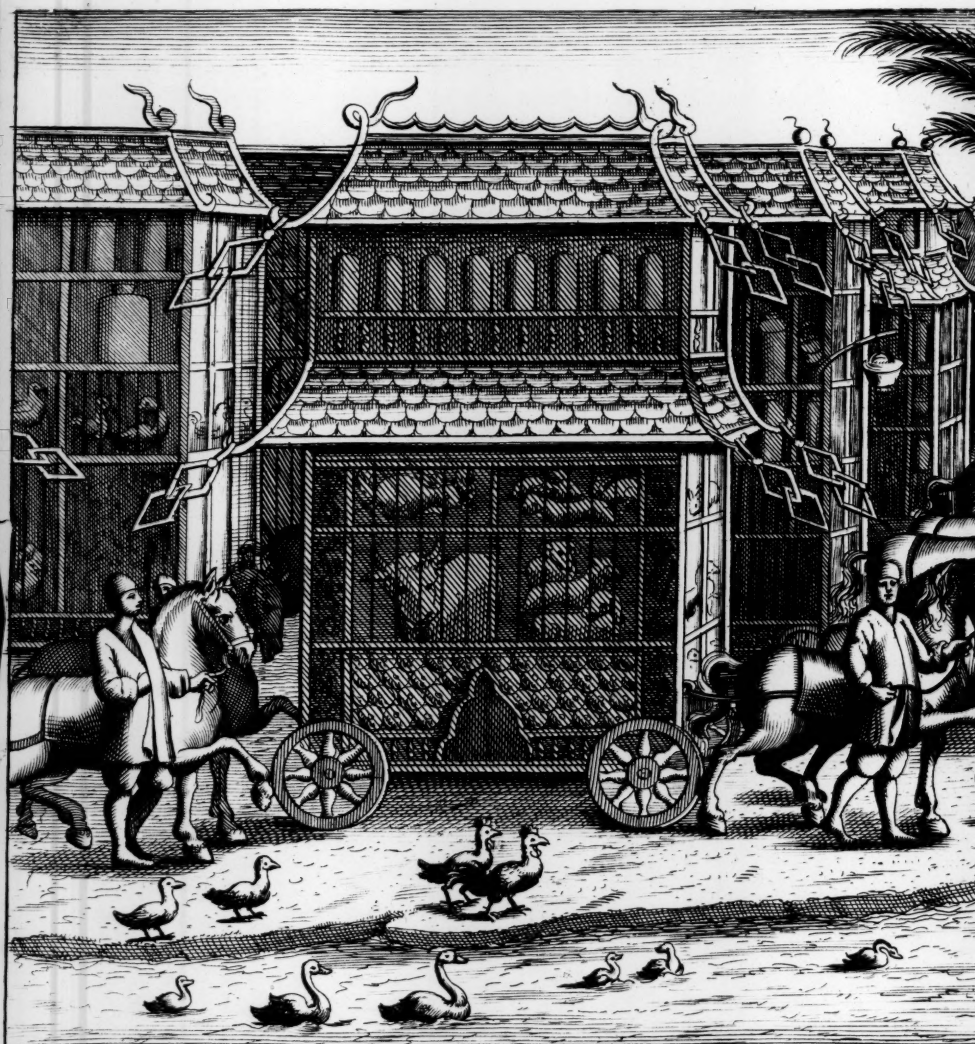
8. *Eight Princes of the Royal Bloud go in Purple Garments with Straw Hats.*

9. *Four Governours of the four chief Provinces of the Kingdom, each bearing a Stick on his Shoulder, on which hangs a Bag full of Gold and several Perfumes; and these Bags contain the Presents which the several Provinces make unto the deceased King, for to be buried with his Corps, that he may make use of the same in the other World.*

10. *Two Chariots go next, each drawn by Eight Horses, and every Couple being led by Two Men. In each Chariot is a Coffer or Trunk full of Bars of Gold and other Riches, for the deceased King's use in the Life to come.*

11. *A great Crowd of the King's Officers, and of the Nobility, do follow this Funeral Pomp, some afoot and some on horse-back, according to their Offices and Qualities.*

Place this Page 46.



A Representation of the Waggons and Boates which in forme of a Convoy attend the Funeral Pompe at the interrment of ȳ Kings of Tuquin from Ch

onvoy carry the Beasts and provision necessarry for the sustenance of those that
om Choco to Bodlego where the body is put in a Galley to be conveyd to ỹ Sepulcher.

A Continuation of ye Order obserud at ye Funerall Pompe for ye Inte

Tunquin page 47.

ye Interment of ye Kings of Tunquin setting out from ye City of Bodlego.

A Continuation of the Order obſerved at the Funeral Pomp of the Kings of *Tunquin*, ſetting out from the City of *Bodlego*.

The King's Body is put into a Galley, which is drawn up the River. This River is increaſed by ſeveral Brooks that come down from the Mountains, and it runs through barren and Deſart Countries. In ſome of theſe places they are wont to bury the Corps very privately; for ſix onely of the chief Eunuchs of the Court are to know where the King hath been buried. An Oath is tendered to them never to reveal the place. And this is done perhaps on ſome Religious Motive, and likewiſe through Fear, that the Treaſures which are buried by him ſhould be digged up. Theſe Riches are ordinarily ſome Maſſy Bars of Gold and Silver, as likewiſe ſome Pieces of Cloth of Gold and Silver, and ſuch kinds of other rich Furnitures, which he is to make uſe of (as they ſay) when he hath need of them in the other World. Many Lords and Ladies of the Court will needs be buried Alive with him, for to ſerve him in the places where he is to go. I have obſerved in paſſing through the Eſtates of the Raja *or Prince of* Velouche, *which border on the Eaſterly parts of the Kingdom of* Viſapour, *that the Wives ſuffer themſelves to be buried Alive near their deceaſed Husbands, inſtead of being burned, as they practiſe in other Provinces of the* Indies.

A. *Here you ſee the Proſpect of the City of* Bodlego.

B. *The Galley where the King's Corps is.*

C. *Two Galleys do carry the Lords who go to be buried Alive with the King. That which is grated about is full of Ladies, who likewiſe offer themſelves to be interred Alive with him.*

D. *Other Galleys, wherein are the Treaſures which are to be buried with the Corps.*

Place this next to, The Order in the March of the Funeral Pomp, &c.

ſpread with Violet-colour'd Calicut, which is the King's Colour. But in regard the King and all the Court march afoot both going and coming, they make it ſeventeen days Journey. At every quarter of a Leagues end are ſet up Huts, where is ready prepar'd Water to drink, and Fire to light their Tobacco. After the Pomp is over, and that the King is returned home, the Cloth is taken up and given to the *Bonzes*.

As to the order of their March it is thus:

The two men that go formoſt of all, are the two Uſhers of the Door of the King's Chamber, who go repeating aloud the Name of the deceaſed King, carrying each of them a Mace of Arms, the bole whereof is full of artificial Fireworks. The twelve that follow, are the twelve chief Officers of the Galley, which draw the Tomb whereon the King's Name is written. Then follows the grand Squire on Horſeback, attended by two others. Next appear twelve led Horſes, which are led two by two, ſix of which have their Bridles enrich'd with thin Plates of Gold, and their Saddles embroydered. The other ſix with Bridles of Gold, and Houſſes embroidered, and fring'd about with a Gold and Silver Fringe; every Horſe being led by two men. Next to them follow twelve Elephants, four which carry each of them a man carrying a Standard; four others which carry each of them a Tower with ſix men apiece, ſome with Muſquets, others with Fire Lances; the four laſt carry each of them a kind of a Cage, of which one is made with Glaſs Windows before and upon each ſide; the other like a kind of a Lattice, and the other with four kinds of Ruffs: and theſe are the King's Elephants which he rode upon when he went to the Wars. Behind them follow eight Horſes, every one of them led by a Captain of the Guard, who draw the Herſe. The new King, and his Brothers if he have any, or the Princes of the Bloud, follow the Herſe, clad in Robes of White Satten, which is their Mourning Colour. Laſtly follow two Chariots, each one drawn by eight Horſes, and carrying two Coffers, wherein are the Panes of Gold, Bars of Silver, rich Tiſſues and Habits, which are to be buried with the Body of the deceaſed King.

The

The Funerals of the Tunquineſes.

AS for the ordinary Funerals of the *Tunquineſes*, they are more or leſs pompous, according to the Quality of the Perſons.

At their Enterments they uſe great ſtore of artificial Fire-works, which are the Companions as well of their Sorrow as their Joy. They ſet upon the Tomb of the deceaſed good ſtore of Victuals and Comfitures, out of a belief that the dead are the better for them. For their Prieſts keep them in that blind Error for their own advantage, and ſo well order their buſineſs, that there is nothing left by morning. The ſame thing is practiſed by the *Chineſes* at *Batavia*, where they have a place without the Town to bury their dead, which puts me in mind of this Story: Every evening the Guard is relieved as well in the City as in the Fortreſs. At the ſame time alſo they put forth eight Souldiers and a Corporal at each Gate of the City, who go the Rounds about the Walls of the City, and as far as within Canon-ſhot of the Walls, being fearful of being ſurpriſed by the King of *Mataran*, or *Bontam*, their Capital Enemies. Now becauſe the *Chineſes* burying place lay in the Walk of theſe Souldiers, when they ſaw the Provant upon one of the Tombs, took it away to their Guard, and there feaſted themſelves. The *Chineſe* Prieſts, that uſually came about midnight to take away the Victuals, finding themſelves ſeveral times bereaved of their Expectations, and ſuſpecting the Souldiers belonging to the *Holland* Garriſon, firſt complained to the General and Council; but that not taking effect, they reſolved to poiſon both the Meat and the Drink, to prevent the like Fraud for the future. This took ſo good effect, that afterwards many of the *Dutch* Souldiers being poiſoned, deterr'd the reſt from any more ſuch Licoriſh Attempts.

CHAP.

CHAP. XV.

Of the Religion and Superſtition of the Tunquineſes

THe *Tunquineſes* as to matters of Religion are divided into three Sects: The firſt takes its original from an ancient Philoſopher called *Confutius*, whoſe Memory is very famous over all *China*, and the neighbouring Countries. Their Doctrine aſſerts that Man is compos'd of two parts, the one fine and ſubtil, the other material and groſs; and that when Man dies, the ſubtiler part goes into the Air, and the groſſer part ſtays in the Earth. This Sect maintains the uſe of Sacrifices, and adores the ſeven Planets. But among all their Gods and Idols they have four in particular veneration; the Names of theſe Gods are *Rauna*, *Betolo*, *Ramonu*, and *Brama*. They have a Goddeſs alſo, whoſe Name is *Satisbana*, which is ſhe whom the Women adore; but for the King and the *Mandarins*, eſpecially the more ſtudious ſort, they adore the Heavens. The ſecond Sect had for its Founder a certain Hermite called *Chacabout*, and is followed by the moſt part of the meaner people. He has taught them the Tranſmigration of Souls, and has enjoyn'd his Followers to obſerve 10 Commandments.

The firſt is, That they ſhall not kill. 2. That they ſhall not ſteal. 3. That they ſhall not defile their Bodies. 4. That they ſhall not lye. 5. That they ſhall not be unfaithful in their words. 6. That they ſhall reſtrain their inordinate Deſires. 7. That they ſhall do injury to no man. 8. That they ſhall not be great Talkers. 9. That they ſhall not give way to their Anger. 10. That they ſhall labour to their utmoſt to get Knowledge.

As for them that deſign to live a Religious Life, they muſt renounce the Delights of this Life, be charitable to the poor, overcome their Paſſions, and give themſelves up to Meditation. He taught moreover, that after this Life there were ten diſtinct places of Joy and Torment: and that the Contemners of this Law ſhould feel Torments proportionable

to their Offences, without any end of their Torments. That they that endeavour'd to fulfill his Law, and had fail'd in any point, they ſhould wander in divers Bodies for 3000 years before they entered into happineſs. But that they who had perfectly obeyed his Law, ſhould be rewarded without ſuffering any change of Body. And that he himſelf had been born ten times, before he enjoyed the Bliſs which he poſſeſſed, not having in his firſt Youth been illuminated with that Knowledge which he afterwards attained. This *Chacabout* was one of the greateſt Impoſtors that ever was in *Aſia*, having ſpread his Opinions over all the Kingdom of *Siam*, over a great part of the Provinces of *Japon*, and from thence into *Tunquin*, where he died.

The third Sect is that of *Lanthu*, to whoſe Fables the *Japonneſes* and *Chineſes* give great credence, but the *Tunquineſes* more. He was a *Chineſe* by Nation, and one of the greateſt Magicians in the Eaſt. He made a great many Diſciples, who to authorize this black Impoſtor, and the more to impoſe upon the people, made them believe that the Birth of *Lanthu* was miraculous, and that his Mother carried him in her Womb, without loſing her Virginity, ſeventy years. He taught much of *Chacabout*'s Doctrine; but that which won the Hearts of the people was, that he ſtill exhorted the Grandees to build Hoſpitals in all Cities where there had been none before. Inſomuch that ſeveral of the Nobility betook themſelves to thoſe places to look after the Sick, as did alſo a great number of the *Bonzes* for the ſame reaſon. While my Brother was there, the *Choüa*, a great Enemy to theſe Vagabonds, ſent for a great number of *Bonzes* and *Says*, or idle Fellows, and picking out the ſtrongeſt and beſt proportion'd, ſent them away to the Frontiers for Souldiers.

'Tis the Cuſtom of the *Tunquineſes* to adore three things in their Houſes: The firſt is the Hearth of their Chimney made of three Stones The ſecond is an Idol which they call *Tienſa*, which is the Patroneſs of Handicrafts, as Sculpture, Painting, Goldſmith's work, &c. So that when they put forth a Child to learn any of thoſe Trades, before they let him work they ſet up an Altar, and ſacrifice to this Idol, to the end he may infuſe into the Lad wit and aptneſs to learn. The third is the Idol *Buabin*, which they implore when

when they deſign to build an Houſe. For then they erect an Altar, and ſend for the *Bonzes* and *Says* to ſacrifice to this Idol. To this purpoſe they make great preparation of all ſorts of Viands, and then preſent him with ſeveral gilt Papers, wherein are written ſeveral Magic words, endeavouring by that means that he may not ſuffer any misfortune to befall the Houſe they are going to build.

There are ſome *Tunquineſes* that adore the Heaven, others the Moon, and others the Stars. There are alſo ſome that adore five parts of the Earth, making a fifth part in the middle of that which is known to us, and to them alſo, but confuſedly. When they worſhip them, they have for each of the parts a particular Colour. When they adore the Northern part, they clothe themſelves in black; and the Diſhes and Table whereon they lay their Sacrifices are likewiſe black. When they worſhip the South their Habit is red; when the Eaſt, green; when the Weſt, white; and when they adore the middle of the World, they wear Yellow.

They offer Offerings likewiſe to Trees, Elephants, Horſes, Cows, and almoſt to all other ſorts of Animals. They that ſtudy the *Chineſe* Characters are accuſtomed every fifth moneth of the year, to ſacrifice for the Souls of the dead who were never buried. They believe that by ſo doing their Underſtandings ſhall be more enlightned for the apprehending of all things.

Every year, at the beginning of the year, they have a great Solemnity, to honour after their death thoſe who in their life-time have done any noble action, and were renowned for their Valour, reckoning in that number thoſe that have been ſo hardy as to rebel againſt their Princes, as being men of Courage. Three days before this great Solemnity, which is perform'd in a large Field, they ſet up ſeveral Altars, ſome for the Sacrifices, others for the Names of the Illuſtrious Men whom they deſign to honour. The Eve before above 40000 Souldiers ſpend the night in this Plain, where all the Princes and *Mandarins* are ordered to meet with their Elephants and led Horſes, and the King himſelf goes thither in perſon. After they have finiſhed all their Sacrifices, and burnt good ſtore of Incenſe to the Honour of the dead, the King and all the *Mandarins* make three pro-

found Reverences where the Altars are ; then the King ſhoots with his Bow and Arrows five times againſt the Altars, where lie the Names of thoſe that were ſo raſh as to rebel againſt their Sovereigns. After that the great Guns go off, and the Souldiers give three Volleys of ſmall Shot, to put all the Souls to flight. Then they burn all the Altars, and a great number of gilt Papers, which were made uſe of at the Sacrifices ; concluding all with a moſt hideous ſhout of all the Souldiery. Which done, the *Bonzes*, *Says*, and ſuch like people, come and devour the Meat that was made uſe of for the Sacrifices.

The firſt and fifteenth days of the Moneth 'tis a wonderful thing to hear the Chiming Din of their great Bells. For thoſe are the more eſpecial Holydays ſet apart for the Worſhip of their Gods, and all the *Bonzes* and *Says* give them more than ordinary Worſhip upon thoſe days, redoubling their Prayers, and repeating upon thoſe days every one of them a ſtrange kind of Charm ſix times over. At theſe times ſeveral people bring Meat and Drink to the Sepulchres of their Kindred, to ſacrifice for the good of their Souls to eat. The *Bonzes* fail not to be there, and when the others have paid their Devoirs the *Bonzes* fall to, and what they cannot eat they give to the poor. But for all the auſtere Lives of theſe *Bonzes* and *Says*, neither the King nor the *Mandarins* make any account of them, ſo that they are in credit onely with the common people.

In the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, where the great Cities have ſeveral *Pagods*, there is hardly a Town or Village that has not one, and for every *Pagod* at leaſt two *Bonzes* and two *Says*. But there are ſome *Pagods* that maintain forty *Bonzes* and as many *Says*, who live in common under a Superiour, they keep to the Doctrine of *Chacabout*, and a Goat is the Idol which they adore. They wear about their Necks a kind of Necklace, conſiſting of 100 Beads, very big and made of Wood. In their Hands they carry a Staff, which is headed with a Bird of varniſh'd Wood. They beg for their living, and are not like the *Bonzes* in other Kingdoms, who beg Alms as it were their due ; theſe on the contrary uſe all the modeſty and humility that may be, never taking more than is needful for them : and if they have any thing to ſpare, they give it to the poor Widows or Orphans that cannot get

their

The Representation Of The Pagods or Temples Of The Idolators In T
Postures Which They Use When They Doe Penance, And Accomplish T
Magic Impostures Which They Are Much Addicted Nj. Thaibout. 2. Th

rs Jn Tunquin, With The Figures Of Their Dieties, & Their Different
plish Their Superstitiůs Vow'es Or When They Practise Their
t. 2. Thaiphou Thoui. 3. Bagoti, Magitians, And Witches

their living. Their Orders permit them to marry, provided they leave their Monaſtery. They aſſiſt at the Funerals of great men, where they ſay a kind of Orizon, ſounding their Trumpets and Cornets, while the Bells in their *Pagods* go at the ſame time.

The *Tunquineſes* alſo have a great veneration for two Magicians, and one Magicianeſs. The firſt of their Magicians, whom they call *Tay-bou*, makes them believe that he knows the Events of things to come; ſo that when they have any occaſion to marry their Children, build a Houſe, buy Land, or undertake any buſineſs of Conſequence, they conſult this Oracle to know what ſhall happen to them. The Magician courteouſly receives them, and with a counterfeit modeſty demands of them (for Example) the Age of the perſon concerned. Then taking into his hands a great Book about three fingers thick, wherein are the Figures of Men, half Men, and ſeveral ſorts of Land and Water Animals, of Circles, Triangles, and Squares, he goes to work, and at the ſame time puts into a Goblet three Pieces of Copper, whereon are engraven ſeveral Characters onely upon one ſide. After he has ſhaken the Pieces in the Cup, he throws them upon the ground as at Croſs and Pile; if all the Characters lie undermoſt he looks no further in his Book, but looks upon it as an unfortunate ſign; but if one or two Characters come up, he looks in his Book, and makes the perſon believe what he pleaſes. But if all the Characters happen to turn uppermoſt, then the Magician cries out, that the Party is the moſt fortunate in the world.

The ſecond Magician is called *Thay-Phou-Thouy*, to whom they have recourſe in all their Sickneſſes. When any ſick perſon comes to him, he takes a Book full of Figures like the former; onely the Form of the Book is different, for this is not above an inch thick, and about four fingers long, with eight Panes full of Cyphers. If after ſeveral Apiſh tricks which he acts before the ſick perſon to amuſe him, he affirms that the Diſtemper comes from the Devil, he himſelf, together with the ſick party and they that brought him, do Homage to the evil ſpirit: this Homage conſiſts of ſeveral Sacrifices, and the Friends of the ſick party preſent to the Devil, or rather to the Magician, a Table furniſh'd with Rice and other Viands. But if after all theſe Offerings the

ſick

ſick party do not recover his health, all the Friends and Kindred of the ſick party, with as many Souldiers as they can get, ſurround the ſick perſons Houſe, and ſhoot off their Muſquets three times, to drive away the Devil. Sometimes the Magician makes the ſick party and his Friends believe, that the God of the Waters is the cauſe of the Diſtemper, eſpecially if the ſick perſon belongs to the Water, as being a Mariner, Boatman, or Fiſherman. And to the end he may be cur'd, and that the appeas'd God may return to his watry Habitation, he orders that all the way from the ſick parties Houſe to the next River may be ſpread with all the Pieces of Stuff which all the Kindred have, and that they ſet up Huts at ſuch and ſuch diſtances, and keep in every one a ſeveral Table furniſh'd with all ſorts of Viands for 3 days. And all this to oblige the Deity to retire, and to entertain him till he gets home. But the better to know the riſe of the Diſeaſe, *Thay-Phou-Thouy* makes them believe, that they muſt go and conſult *Thay-Bou*, who is the chief Magician, and if he anſwer that the Souls of the dead have cauſed the Diſtemper, the Magician imploys all his tricks and devices to draw to him thoſe miſchievous Souls; and when he has got into his Clutches, as he pretends, the Soul that is the Author of the Diſeaſe, he ſhuts him up in a Bottle full of Water till the party be cured; and then breaking the Bottle he ſets the Soul at liberty to go about his buſineſs. When the party recovers, he makes him and his Friends believe, that if the Bottle had not been well ſtopp'd to keep in the Soul, their Kinſman would have died infallibly.

The Magicianeſs, which the *Tunquineſes* alſo conſult, is called *Bacoti*, and ſhe keeps a great Correſpondence with the Devil, to whom, if ſhe has a Daughter, ſhe offers her as ſoon as ſhe is born, the more to oblige him. If any Mother bewail the death of her Child, and be deſirous to know in what condition the Soul of the Child is in, in the other world, ſhe goes to *Bacoti*, who to ſatisfie the Mother preſently falls a beating her Drum, to ſummon the Soul to come to her, who preſently appears, as ſhe pretends, and tells her its Condition whether good or bad. But moſt commonly ſhe makes the ſilly Mothers believe that the Soul is happy, and bids them be of good cheer.

The

The Superſtitions of theſe people are very numerous, but the moſt remarkable are theſe:

The ſtudious ſort of people are very diligent to learn how by looking in a Mirrour to foretell things to come.

There are ſome that preſent *Aqua Vitæ* to the dead, and ſprinkle their Aſhes with it; but this onely upon the Aſhes of their Anceſtors, from whom at the ſame time they beg for Health, Honour, and Riches.

Others there are, that upon the firſt day of their year take a piece of Chalk, and make ſeveral Figures round, ſquare, and triangular, upon the Threſhold and Steps of their Doors. They ſay thoſe Figures fright away the evil ſpirits. Some there are that make great Obſervations upon the Feet of their Hens, and draw ſtrange Concluſions of bad or ill fortune from thence. Others travelling into the Countrey, if they ſneeze but once by the way, return to the place from whence they parted in the morning, ſaying, That had they gone on, ſome miſchief would have certainly befallen them: but if they ſneeze twice, they purſue their Journey, never fearing any danger for that day.

There are ſome ſo ſuperſtitious, that going out of their Houſes, if they meet a Woman, they return home again for two or three hours; but if they meet a Man, 'tis a good *Omen*.

The firſt Fruit which they gather at the beginning of the year, is that which the *Araguer* bears, ſpoken of in the third Chapter. And this is the firſt which they eat with great Ceremony, during the firſt Quarter of their ſecond Moneth. To which purpoſe they are ſo poſſeſs'd with the Devil, that they poyſon one of theſe Fruits, and give it to a Child to eat, believing that by taking away the life of the poor innocent Child, they ſhall thrive the better all the year after.

When the Moon is eclipſed, they ſay there is a certain Dragon that aſſails her, and endeavours with all his might to overcome her, with an intention to devour her. Then to aſſiſt the Moon, and to put the Dragon to flight, they diſcharge their Muſquets, ring their Bells, beat up their Drums, and make a hideous noiſe till the Eclipſe be over: and then they believe that they have reſcued the Moon, for which they make as great a rejoycing, as if they had obtain'd ſome eminent Victory over their Enemies.

They

They are alſo very ſuperſtitious in reference to the hours of the day. They divide the natural day into twelve hours, and to every one they give the name of ſome Beaſt, as of a Tiger, a Lion, a Bear, a Horſe, a Dragon, an Ape, &c. The Moneths alſo and Days have their particular Names: and when a Child is born, preſently the Father and Kindred go to ſee the name of the Beaſt by which the Hour was call'd wherein the Child was born; believing that Animal will prove fatal to it. At the time that my Brother was at the Court at *Tunquin*, the King then reigning being born in the hour of the Horſe, would never give Audience, nor ever ſtir out of his Palace at that hour, for fear ſome miſchief ſhould befall him at that time. That Prince was ſo ſuperſtitious, that one of his Children dying in the fifth moneth, which bears the name of the Horſe, he would never permit him to be enterr'd, but caus'd him to be burnt, and ſcatter'd his aſhes in the Air.

This is that which I could gather of moſt remarkable and moſt conſiderable matters concerning the State of the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, either out of the Manuſcripts which my Brother (who died in the *Indies*) left me, or from the Diſcourſe which I have had with the *Tunquineſes* themſelves both at *Bantam* and *Batavia*.

OF

OF THE

ISLAND

OF

FORMOSA.

CHAP. I.

How the Hollanders *poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and how it was taken from them by the* Chineſes.

THE Iſland of *Formoſa* is about Eighty Leagues in compaſs; ſo that the *Hollanders* were never in poſſeſſion of the whole Iſland, but were onely Maſters of four Fortreſſes, and two and fifty Villages, wherein they could number about fourteen or fifteen thouſand Inhabitants. As for that part which is under the *Indians*, the beſt diſcovery that we can give, is onely ſuch as was made by a young *Hollander* upon this occaſion.

There was in the chief Fort belonging to the *Hollanders* a young man, imployed there as an under-Factor, who being wild and extravagant, was put out of his place and made a Souldier. He not able to undergo that miſerable courſe of life, reſolved with himſelf rather to die, than live in that mean condition. Thereupon having at ſeveral opportunities made a ſhift to make up a little Pack of what he thought was moſt fit for the Mountainiers of the Iſland, he watch'd his time and ſtole out of the Fort, and took his way directly toward the Mountains. With theſe Highlanders he liv'd four years, in which time having learnt the Trade and Language of the Countrey, he ventur'd to return to the *Hollanders* again, who received him kindly, as being willing to underſtand the Government of the People, and by what means they might traffick with them. Whereupon the young man made them this Relation.

As for the Government of the People he ſaid, that over every ſix Villages there was an Overſeer with four Counſellors, who adminiſter Juſtice, and puniſh the ſmalleſt Theft with Death. The Men are crucified; the Women are laid along upon a thick Beam of Wood, and then with a Scimitar their Bodies are divided into three parts. The Men are ſo puniſh'd for Theft or Murder, and the Women for Theft or Adultery. If it be a Pety Larceny, not above the value of a Shilling, they give them an hundred Laſhes with a Whip, and burn them in the Cheek. They that believe themſelves to be unjuſtly dealt with, whether in Civil or Criminal Cauſes, enter their Appeal to go to the North Eaſt part of the Iſland, in which diviſion of the Iſland there ſtands a City by the Sea-ſide, where he that commands all the Highlanders reſides. At the end of our Moneth of *March* ſeveral of theſe Highlanders reſort to this City, eſpecially the Merchants, who carry along with them all their whole Stock that they had hoarded together the year before in Horns of Oxen, Harts, Bufulo's, and Raw Hides; and then return again at the end of *April*, bringing back in return of their Commodities *Japon* and *China* Stuffs, Clothes, and Linen of the ſame Countrey, and Gold and Silver *Japoneſe* Money, of various Coyns and Value. He told them alſo, that he believed that in the Mountains near the Sea, there are certain Mines of Gold and Silver, or ſome River where they

they find it in Powder, and that the *Japoneſes* fetch it in their Veſſels. He did all he could to diſcover the truth, but after he had travelled two or three days Journey, the People would let him go no further. For at the end of every three or four hours travel there are Guards ſet, who examine all Travellers whither they go; neither will they let their own Countrymen paſs, but ſuch as go about their Law or to trade. Moreover he told them, that if they would give him Goods to trade withall, as Amber, Coral, Looking Glaſſes; but chiefly ſome Skins of the Sea Fiſh, which is rougher than Seal-skin, he would endeavour to get to the very City it ſelf where the Ships ride. Theſe Skins are greatly eſteemed by the Natives to adorn the Scabbards of their Cutlaſſes and Swords. For uſually upon the back of this Fiſh you ſhall find nine little Stones, which make a kind of a Roſe, eight in a Circle and one in the middle, as you ſee theſe nine diſpoſed in their exact order. When the *Portuguezes* traded onely to *Japon*, it is incredible how dear they ſold theſe Skins. For if Nature had well ſet theſe Stones at an equal diſtance, and even in bigneſs, one of theſe Skins would yield above ten thouſand *Piaſters*, and more. This Fiſh is caught in the *Perſian* Gulph, where I have ſeen of them, but I ſaw but very few ſo perfect as that which I have deſcrib'd, which would in thoſe Countries yield ten thouſand Crowns.

But to return to the Story; the Governour gave the young man what he deſired, and ſent him going: but the *Chineſes* ſoon after expelling the *Hollanders* out of the Iſland, it was never known what became of the young man.

It may be wondered why *Formoſa* was taken ſo ſoon: but here were two Reaſons, firſt the faint-heartedneſs of the Governour, and ſecondly his breach of word to a *French* Souldier of *Rouen*, call'd *Abraham du Puys*; for he having ſerved out his time of ſeven years, deſir'd leave to be gone, but the Governour, after he had promis'd him fair at firſt, at length abſolutely refuſed him. Soon after the *Chineſes* came to beſiege the place. The Souldier thus diſappointed, and ſeeing himſelf coop'd up who might have been free, had the Governour ſo pleaſed, ſtudied a fatal revenge upon all his Countrymen; for being by this means grown deſperate,

watch'd his opportunity, and flinging himſelf from the Fort into the Sea, ſwam directly to the Enemy. The Governour offered 200 Pieces of Eight to any perſon that would venture after him, and bring him back dead or alive. A Serjeant accepted his offer, but it was to get looſe as the other had done; and ſo they got both ſafe into the Enemies Quarters. The *Chineſes* preſently carried them to the General *Coxima*; and he being a perſon of Valour and Diſcretion, made very much of them, whereupon they readily and willingly inform'd him of the ſtrength and condition of the Fortreſs. They alſo adviſed him to remove his Batteries to the weakeſt part of the Town, whereas he was then aſſailing it where it was moſt ſtrongly fortified: which if he would do, they aſſur'd him he ſhould be ſoon Maſter of the Fort. The General was thinking a little before they came to have raiſed his Siege, but upon their encouragement he fell on again according to their direction; and as he was preparing for a general Aſſault, the *Holland* Commander, fearful of loſing his Life and his Eſtate, beat a Parley, and ſurrender'd the place upon Articles.

During the Siege the *Hollanders* made a Salley, but were beaten in again, and fourteen of their men were taken Priſoners. The *Chineſes* finding thoſe fourteen men in their power, and remembering how cruel the *Hollanders* had been to their Nation when they took any of them at Sea, brought the fourteen men all together, put out one eye of each, cut off their Noſes, Ears, and one hand, and ſo ſent them back to the Fort, with order to tell the Commander, that the *Dutch* had taught them that kind of Mercy.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Of Maurice *Iſland, where they cut Ebony.*

THE Iſland call'd *Maurice* Iſland lies almoſt in 84 degrees of Longitude, and 21 degrees of Southern Latitude, being but 2 degrees and 30 minutes from the Tropick of *Capricorn*, right over againſt the middle of the great Iſland of *Madagaſcar*, which it has upon the Weſt, from whence it lies 140 Leagues, and is in compaſs about 60 Leagues. It bears great quantities of Ebony: and here it was that the *Hollanders* did formerly ſend their Slaves, their baniſh'd and condemn'd Perſons, to cut that ſort of Wood, which is Labour much more ſevere and cruel than that of Rowing in the Galleys. The whole Iſland is ſubject to thoſe violent and outrageous Tempeſts call'd *Ouragans*, which nothing can withſtand, ſo that the People are forc'd to dig themſelves Holes in the ground, not being able to keep their Huts ſtanding. Neither had the poor Creatures any other Food than a little boil'd Rice, and about a Farthings worth of Salt-fiſh among four for a whole day. Since that the Price of Ebony being brought very low, the *Dutch* have forſaken the Iſland, the Profit not bearing the ſorry Expences which thoſe poor Creatures put them to.

So ſoon as this Tree is cut down it muſt be ſawed into Planks, and then buried ſeven or eight foot deep in the Earth, which ought to be ſomewhat moiſt. There thoſe Planks muſt lie two years, and ſometimes three, if the Wood be very thick. After that the Wood is fit to be wrought upon, neither will it ſplinter or ſplit, and will the ſooner admit of a glittering Poliſhment.

This *Maurice* Iſland puts me in mind of a Story, that the Sieur *Loocker* told me, concerning what befell him in his Voyage from *Holland* to *Batavia* in the Year 1643. *Cha Abbas* the ſecond of that Name, King of *Perſia*, having a great deſire to learn to paint, ſignified to the *Hollanders* at *Hiſpahan*, that he deſired them to ſend into *Holland* for ſome per-

perſon who was excellent both in Deſigning and Painting. Thereupon the Chief of the Factory wrote into *Holland*, and upon his Letters the Company ſent away *Loocker*, to oblige the King; and to do him the greater honour, gave him the charge of Merchant of the Veſſel, who is equal with the Captain, during the Voyage; to whom the Wind and Seaſon was very favourable till they came to the *Cape of Good Hope*; but after they had doubled the Point, the Pilots bare too much to the North, whereas they ſhould have ſteered directly Eaſt; ſo that when they had made the Height of the Iſland of *Madagaſcar*, they met with nothing but contrary Winds. For it is obſervable, that all the year long there blows but one Wind toward *Maurice* Iſland; ſo that a Ship may go thither in eight or nine days, but cannot return in thirty or forty. For you muſt ſteer Weſtward to 30 degrees, and from thence Eaſtward to 14 or 15 degrees, and then you light upon *Maurice* Iſland. Five days together the Ship was but rudely handled by the ſtorm; which at length grew ſo violent, and the Sea ſo boiſterous, that all the great Cabin was broken to pieces, the Beak of the Ship carried away, and the Foremaſt made unſerviceable. Thirteen days together they remained in this miſerable condition, toſs'd up and down by the Sea and Wind, all which time they never ſaw the Sun, unable to take any height or obſervation where they were. The fourteenth day it cleared up, and the Sun appeared, and then taking the Height they obſerved themſelves to be not far from the *Maurice* Iſland, which was very true; for the next day by break of day they found themſelves not above two Leagues from the Iſland; and they found themſelves upon the North ſide of the Iſland, whereas the *Hollanders* liv'd upon the South. And therefore perceiving that if the Wind did not change, it would be a long time, and that with great difficulty too, before they could fetch a compaſs about the Iſland to come to the Fort where the *Hollanders* were, they call'd a Council, where it was reſolved that *Loocker* with ten Souldiers ſhould be put on ſhoar, and that he ſhould endeavour to get to the Fort by Land, there to make proviſion of Water and Refreſhments for the reſt of the Company, againſt they could come about. *Maurice* Iſland has this advantage, to be furniſhed with excellent Water, and great ſtore of Goats, Oranges, Ci-

Citrons, and other Fruits: but when the *Ouragans* happen there is not one to be ſeen upon the Trees, unleſs onely upon thoſe which are ſhelter'd by the Ebony Boughs, which are thick and ſtrong, and the Trees deeply rooted in the Earth. *Loocker* thereupon with ten Souldiers was put on ſhoar in a Shallop, with Proviſions for ſix days. Nor was the Iſland in that part above eight or ten Leagues broad, which they thought to travel in few days: but the Woods were ſo thick, that had they not been well provided of Carpenters Hatchets and Axes, they could never have made their way. The firſt day they travell'd not above a League, and the next day not above as much more, being ſtill forced to hack their way along with great travel and pains. So that being now weary and ſpent, they laid themſelves upon the ground to repoſe themſelves, and get a little ſleep. When they wak'd they heard the voices of ſeveral people, which much rejoyced them, believing them to be the Slaves and poor Creatures that were cutting Ebony not far off. Thereupon they fell to work to get as near them as they could: but the Woods proved ſo thick, that they deſpair'd of doing any good. Nevertheleſs the further they advanced, the clearer they could hear the voices of the people, ſome ſpeaking *Dutch*, others *Portugueſe*. Whereupon *Loocker* caus'd one of the Souldiers in his company that had a ſtrong voice, to call out in the *Portugueſe* Language, to the people to come and help them. But inſtead of that they all betook themſelves to their heels, and fled to the Commander's Lodge, telling him that there were Devils in the Woods, and that they had call'd to them in the *Portugal* Language. The Commander ſeeing both the Souldiers and the Slaves in ſuch a diſmal amaze and terror, knew not at firſt what to think; however he endeavoured to reſettle their diſtraction, and to revive a ſort of people that were half dead with fear. The next day he perſuaded them to return to their Work, perſuading them to lay aſide their vain Fears, which proceeded onely from idle Apprehenſions: but they flatly denied him, telling him that they would rather die, than return to be torn in pieces by the Devil. However, others that had not been preſent at the accident, and therefore gave not ſo much credit to the report, profered to ſee the utmoſt of this buſineſs, provided any one that had

had heard the voice would bring them to the place. Away upon this went a good number of them together, and coming to the place fell to work. Now becauſe *Loocker* and his Companions having labour'd all the night before, were fallen aſleep ; for a good while the Workmen heard no voice at all, nor ſo much as any thing ſtirring, ſo that they began to laugh at thoſe that had brought them thither, who ſtill obſtinately maintained the truth of what they had heard. This Diſpute at length began to grow ſo hot and ſo loud, that at length they wak'd *Loocker* and his Fellows, who being now got nearer to them by means of their laſt nights labour, heard diſtinctly every word they ſaid, and notwithſtanding their diſtreſs could not chuſe but laugh. Soon after *Loocker* and the Souldiers call'd out again, *Work toward us*, they cried, *we are Hollanders, come and help us out of the Wood, and we will put an end to the diſpute.* But the Workmen no ſooner heard them, but away they ran for their Lives, and when they came to the Lodge, they were ſo har'd, ſo ſcar'd, and quite out of breath, that the Governour in vain endeavour'd to get the leaſt tittle of a word from them. At length being come to themſelves, they aſſur'd him that it was too true that the Devils were in the Wood, and that the more to deceive and wheedle them, to day they had not onely ſpoken *Portugueſe*, but *Dutch* too. This put the Governour and all into a deep Conſternation, inſomuch that they were all at their Wits end. But the next morning *Loocker* and his Gang having made their way through, the Centinel ſpied them firſt from the Fort, and by the diſcharge of his Muſquet gave notice of the approach of the Devils. And then it was that the poor affrighted Mortals, laying aſide their fears, and going forth to meet their own Shapes, found them to be a company of their Countrymen in diſtreſs, whom they then received into their kindneſs, to give an account of their Misfortunes. Three days after the Ship came into Harbour, though in a miſerable condition.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

Of the Grandeur of the General at Batavia, *and what befell his Wife and his Niece.*

THe Company to maintain their Authority and Commerce in the *Indies*, believe it to be to their advantage, that the General whom they ſend to *Batavia*, and who commands in all the places in *Aſia* where the *Dutch* traffic, ſhould keep up the Port of a Prince. There is no Cavalry in *Europe* ſo well clad or mounted as his; the Horſemen all upon *Perſian* or *Arabian* Steeds. Nor is his Foot Guard leſs ſumptuous: His Halberdiers wear their yellow Satten Doublets, Scarlet Breeches lac'd with Silver Lace, and their Silk Stockins. But this onely for the General's Guards; for thoſe which they ſend abroad to their Forts and Garriſons, it is a great pity to ſee how poorly they are attir'd, and how meanly fed. When the *Dutch* Fleet arrives at *Batavia*, the Souldiers which they bring are drawn up in the Parade of the Fortreſs by the Major, who chuſes out the handſomeſt to remain at *Batavia*, the reſt are ſent and diſtributed into other places. When the General and his Wife go abroad, they always ride in their Coach and ſix Horſes, with ſix Halberdiers attending at each Boot, and a Troop of Horſe and two Companies of Foot for their Guard. The Authority of the General is very great, though he may be ſometimes commanded by his Wife: neither is it ſafe for them that depend upon them, to do or ſay any thing that may offend them. But for others, who have their Imployments immediately from the Company, they never oblige themſelves to be ſo circumſpect. For truth whereof I will relate the following pleaſant Story.

The Wife of General *Matſuker* having one day undertaken to play upon a Captain of a Ship call'd the *Lucifer*, and to laugh at him, for having loſt a Bale of Goods which had been ſeized by the Company, in regard no particular perſon is permitted to trade. The Captain nettled at her Diſcourſe, reſolved to be revenged. Nor was it long before he found

the means; for being commanded away for *Maſlipatan* in the Kingdom of *Goleonda*, where being arriv'd, laden, and ready to ſet Sail to return to *Batavia*, the chief of the Factory deſired him to take in four Bales of Goods for the General's Wife, as belonging to her, and to deliver them privately to her. This was Nuts to the Captain: ſo that being return'd to *Batavia*, he went he went immediately to viſit the General, and deliver him the Letters which concerned the *Cargo*. Immediately according to cuſtom the General invited him to dinner, at which time it is uſual for the General to inform himſelf of the Condition of the Factory. Among the reſt of the queſtions the General asked the Captain whether he had any Counterband Goods aboard, or any that were not upon the Company's ſole account. To which the Captain anſwered, that all the Goods belonged to the Company, except four Bales, which the chief Factor at *Maſlipatan* had particularly recommended to his care, as belonging to Madam General. This being publickly ſpoken in the preſence of a great many that were at Table, the Lady that was not aware of ſuch a blow, was not a little ſurpriz'd, and the General himſelf was not a little in wrath, ſternly ask'd her how ſhe durſt undertake to trade without his knowledge. Preſently ſhe denied the whole matter, and averred that the Captain was miſtaken, and took her for ſome other perſon. But the General ſent for the Fiſcal, and order'd him to go forthwith with the Captain, and fetch the four Bales aſhoar; which being done, he order'd further that the Goods ſhould be carried into the public Hall of the Town Houſe, with a Writing fix'd upon them, that whoever own'd thoſe Goods ſhould come and claim them; but no body came. So that the Captain had the pleaſure to ſee the Lady in a delicate raging paſſion, and the Goods diſpos'd of to the Fiſcal, and the Poor of the Hoſpital.

The ſame General and his Wife having no Children, they began to conſider to whom they ſhould leave their Eſtates. At length the General bethought himſelf of a Niece he had at *Amſterdam*, and therefore wrote to the Directors of the Company to ſend her to him. This Niece of his cried Potherbs and Onions about the ſtreet to get her living; in which Calling ſhe was at laſt found out, and brought to the Directors, who preſently changed her Habit, and of a Crier of

Cab-

Cabbage made her a little Lady; who though ſhe were of ſuch a low condition, was not without a good proportion of natural Beauty.

The Fleet being ready to depart, there was a Cabin built on purpoſe for this Niece, and the Company having preſented her with ſeveral pieces of Tiſſue and Silks, recommended her to *C. Roſſe*, the Viceadmiral's care. This Captain had been ſeveral times at the *Indies* before, and was both rich and a Batchelour: ſo that when the Ship was out at Sea, he fail'd not to ſhew all the reſpects imaginable to this Niece. Now this young Virgin not being accuſtomed to the Sea, upon the leaſt guſt of Wind ſhe was half dead; and all that time the Captain would not ſtir from her Bed-ſide, for fear any Accident ſhould befall her. And as he was thus diligent not to ſtir from her Bed-ſide in fowl, 'tis verily believ'd he was ſeldom far from it in fair weather; and that inſtead of ſitting by her Bed-ſide, he ſometimes got fairly into it. But whether he were within or without, moſt certain it is, that before Madam Niece arrived at *Batavia*, ſhe found her ſelf to be with child, though ſhe ſo diſcreetly concealed it, that none in the Veſſel perceived it.

The Veſſel had no ſooner paſſed the Strait that lies toward *Bantam*, but Madam General with a great number of her Friends in ſeveral little Barques came out to meet Madam Niece, and were not a little ſurprized to find her to be a perſon ſo well clad and handſom withall, without any appearance of what ſhe had been before.

A Coach and ſix Horſes, and ſix Halberdiers, a Troop of Horſe, and a Company of Foot, waited upon the ſhoar for Madam General. And thus was Madam Niece conducted to the Fort with great pomp, and as kindly received by Monſieur General. Some few days after ſeveral of the Gallants of *Batavia* came picquiering to the Houſe to ſee Madam Niece; and ſo it was, that all being ſmitten, every one deſired her in Marriage: but both Uncle and Aunt were deaf to all their Suits, as having deſign'd her to a young rich Merchant, who was then out of the way. *C. Roſſe* laugh'd in his ſleeve at the buſtle that was made, and ſtill continued his former reſpects and double Diligences, which were the more willingly permitted him in regard of the great care of

their Niece, for which the Uncle and the Aunt thought themſelves oblig'd to him during their Voyage. But at length ſeeing ſuch a ſwarm of Sweethearts about her, he thought it but charity to undeceive ſo many poor Gulls, and without further ceremony to go to her Aunt, and to demand her Niece for his Wife. The She General who look'd upon herſelf to be a kind of a Queen at *Batavia*, look'd upon it as a high offence and indignity for a Tarpaulin Captain of a Ship to dare to make her ſuch a Propoſal, having already refus'd ſuch Matches, perſons that might come to be Privy Counſellors of all the *Indies*. Nevertheleſs within a day or two after the Captain renewed his Charge, but then in a Majeſtic Fury ſhe utterly forbid him the Fort. He taking little notice of her rage, goes to the General, and after ſome Diſcourſe makes the ſame Propoſal, and receives the ſame Anſwer. But then the Captain gave the Husband ſuch a Bone to pick, that he would not give the Wife; Sir, ſaid he, twice already have I demanded your Niece in Marriage, this is now the third time that I make the ſame demand; if you refuſe me, you ſhall ask me four times before I accept of her: and ſo ſaying briskly left him. The General reflecting upon the Captain's words, went to his Wife and told her the Story, who gueſſing at the effects of a long Voyage Familiarity, call'd Madam Niece into examination: She not being us'd to Diſſimulation confeſs'd the whole matter, and without any more to do was married to the Captain, to the great wonder of the whole City, till the birth of a Boy at the end of ſix moneths unfolded the Riddle. But this lying in was her ruin; for about five or ſix days after, the Mother and the Nurſe being ill, the chief Chirurgeon of the Fort order'd them to take a little *Cremor Tartar*; and to that purpoſe ſent a young man to the Maſter Chirurgeon of the Town, to ſend him two quantities of *Cremor Tartar* in two Papers. He being drinking with his Friends, ſends a young Barber newly come from *Holland*, to put up the two quantities according to direction. But the Barber miſtook the Glaſs, and put up *Sublimate* inſtead of *Cremor Tartar*. So the two Women taking their Doſes, diſſolved in two Silver Cups of fair Water, died in 24 hours after.

CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

Of General Vanderbroug, *and of the Original of the City of* Batavia

GEneral *Vanderbroug* was of *Anverſe*, and having ſtudied in the Jeſuits College, retained ſome tincture of Learning, which he endeavoured to improve as much as his buſineſs would give him leave. While he was General he caus'd the *Alcoran* to be tranſlated out of *Arabic* into *Dutch*. He was alſo a man of courage, and ſeveral times expos'd himſelf to great hazards for the Service of the Company, as you ſhall ſee by the following Relation.

After the *Hollanders* had taken ſeveral Prizes from the *Portuguezes* by Sea, they wanted a place of Retreat, where they might repair their endamaged Ships, and repoſe after the toils of the Sea. At firſt they caſt their eyes upon the Iſland of *Java*, in that place where the *Engliſh* had built a ſmall Convenience for their Trade. There is a Road in that part, where Veſſels ride ſecurely all the year, into which a River diſcharges it ſelf that will receive Shallops of good burthen, for above a thouſand Paces. The Water of this River is moſt excellent; for being carried never ſo far to Sea, it never ſtinks, nor engenders Worms; which can only be ſaid of the *Thames* and *Ganges* beſides.

The *Hollanders* therefore came and lay upon the point of a River, over againſt the place where the *Engliſh* had their ſmall Houſe. They had with them then the greateſt part of the Ships which they had in the *Indies*, laden with thoſe great Bales of Cloth which come from *Bengale* and the Coaſt of *Surat*, ſo big that a dozen men can hardly manage them. Theſe Bales they landed, and of them made a kind of Fortification, planting a good number of great Guns between them: For they never wanted great Guns ever ſince they traded alone to *Japon*, the onely Kingdom of the World abounding in Copper; from whence they brought prodigious quantities to *Macao* and *Goa*, where they caſt their Artillery.

Thus

Thus the *Hollanders* thought that by Sea no body could endamage their ſmall Fortification, made of Bales of cloth, which was defended by their Veſſels which they had in the Road: But by Land they were afraid that the King of the Iſland, *viz.* either of *Materan* or *Bantam*, might diſturb them. Obſerving therefore the Situation of the Iſland, which on that ſide was all covered with Woods, which reached on that ſide within a League of the Sea; and that where they ended, to the Shoar there was no other way but a Bank, which ſeparated the Marſh from the River: So that the *Hollanders* the better to ſecure themſelves againſt the two Kings, reſolved to raiſe a Tower upon the Bank. In this Tower they planted ſeveral Culverins and ſmall Pieces, cramm'd with artificial Wildfire, and every evening relieved their Guards. The King of *Materan* perceiving this, and believing that the *Hollanders* would not ſtop here, advanced a powerful Army to pull down the Tower. To which purpoſe he brought with him great Chains of Iron, and Cables made of the *Coco* Flax; believing that by the favour of the Night, having got his Chains and Ropes about the Tower, by the ſtrength of his Men and Elephants he might eaſily pull it down. But having fail'd in his Enterprize, and for that the *Hollanders* Artillery kill'd him abundance of Men, he retreated with his Army. But it was not long before he return'd again with a more powerful Force by Land, and alſo a great Fleet of ſmall Veſſels to aſſiſt him by Sea. With theſe Forces he gave a furious Onſet a ſecond time, which the *Hollanders* with no leſs vigour ſuſtained, and beat him off. But nothing diſcouraged with his loſs, he reſolved to give a third Onſet, onely he ſtaid ſome few days in expectation of more Forces.

In the mean while one of the moſt conſiderable Captains of his Army was accus'd to the King not to have done his Duty: though ſeaſonably advertiz'd that the King was reſolv'd to ſeize upon his perſon, and cut him to pieces. For you muſt know, that among the *Javans* when any perſon has merited Death, they tie the Offender all along upon a great piece of Timber, and the next Lord or great perſon that has a mind to try the goodneſs of his Scimitar, comes and cuts the Body into four pieces, the firſt ſtroak being made upon the Breſt, the ſecond upon the Pit of the Stomach, the third

third upon the lower part of the Belly. The four pieces if they be Men, are burnt; if Women, thrown to the Dogs, which they keep for that purpoſe. For the *Javans* never burn any perſon.

This *Javaneſe* Lord therefore knowing what he was to truſt to, made his eſcape to the *Hollanders*, and was kindly received by *Vanderbroug*. To ingratiate himſelf, he told the *Dutch* General all the King's Deſigns in reference to the carrying the place; where he would make his Onſet, and what number of men he had. This however did not ſufficiently chear up the General, who knew his own weakneſs. So that the *Javaneſe* perceiving him ſtill penſive, I find (ſaid he) that thou art afraid of the King's ſtrength, and reaſon thou haſt, but be rul'd by me: Thou art not ignorant that the *Javanners* are rigid Obſervers of the Law of *Mahomet*, and that if any Uncleanneſs from a Chriſtian hand falls upon their Clothes, they fling them away, and ſpend ſix whole days in waſhing themſelves, before they believe themſelves clean. Hear then, ſaid he; let all the Ordure and Dung of the People that are with thee be heaped in a place together, and made fluid in Pots for that purpoſe; and when they mount their Ladders, ſpare not for Showres of that Liquor, and I warrant ye they will retreat faſter than they came on. Farther continued he; I know that the points of their Arrows and *Cric's* are poiſon'd, and that this poiſon is ſo ſtrong, that whoever are wounded therewith die ſuddenly, unleſs they have recourſe to this onely Remedy; which is to preſerve their own Excrement, and to dry it to powder; and when they find themſelves wounded, to take a little of the powder, and drink it off in a ſmall Beer-glaſs of Water. The General obſerving what the *Javan* Lord had ſaid, when the Enemy mounted their Ladders, luſtily beſmear'd them with the Liquor, which he caus'd to be prepar'd againſt their coming; ſo that inſtead of gaining the tops of their Ladders, they made all the haſte they could down again; but being hindred by thoſe that follow'd them, they threw themſelves headlong to the ground; by which means ſeveral of them were maimed, and ſeveral kill'd outright. Thus the Army disbanded in a moment, and the Emperour was the firſt that took his flight. *Vanderbroug* obſerving the diſorderly Retreat of the Enemy, took a ſmall Party with him, and pur-

ſu'd

ſu'd the flying Enemy, who being encloſed by thoſe in the Fort, that ſally'd out upon them, were miſerably cut in pieces. But the General having left the greateſt part of his men, and returning onely with a ſmall and very inconſiderable Company, the *Javanners* who had hid themſelves in the Merſhes for fear, reſum'd courage, and ſuddenly fell upon him in his return, and ſo encompaſs'd him on every ſide, that it was impoſſible for him to eſcape. However they defended themſelves ſtoutly for a while, but being wounded with the Arrows and *Cric's* of the *Indians*, and not being provided of the forementioned Antidote, they died immediately. The General was taken alive, not ſo much as wounded; for as he told me afterwards himſelf, he found they had no deſire to kill him. So ſoon as he was taken they carried him to the Emperour, who as ſoon as he ſaw him bid him not fear any thing, but told him withall, that it was his pleaſure, that he ſhould command his Men to quit the Fort and Tower, and be gone; otherwiſe that he would make both him, and all thoſe that ſhould fall into his Hands, perpetual Slaves. At the ſame time the Emperour with his principal Officers, and the General with a good Guard, came to the Foot of the Wall of the Tower, where the General in the *Malay* Language, laying before them his own misfortune, and the improbability of their holding out long, commanded them to quit the Fort, after they had embarqued whatever they ſaw fitting, but onely 6 Pieces of ſmall Canon, 200 Bullets, and 500 Quintals of Powder. The Emperour was overjoy'd to hear what the General ſaid, and thought himſelf ſure of the Fort and Tower. But then the General turning to the Emperour, told him, that none of his men underſtood *Malay*, and that therefore it would be convenient for him to repeat the ſame in *Flemiſh*. Which being granted, he ſpoke to the Souldiers in *Flemiſh*, and ordered them quite the contrary; that is to ſay, that they ſhould not be Traitors to their Countrey, but hold out the place till death, not minding what became of him; and to that end, that they ſhould bid the Infidels forthwith retire, or elſe they would immediately fire all their Guns upon them. The Emperour aſtoniſh'd at their Reſolution retreats, and carries the General with him. Being thus retir'd, the General made him believe that he would find a means

means to write to the Company, to give them an account of what had paſs'd, and that he was confident they would give ſuch order for an Accommodation, as ſhould ſatisfie His Majeſty, which ſatisfi'd the Emperour for that time. In the mean while the General found an opportunity to get into a ſmall Barque, and to get to the Fort, where he was joyfully receiv'd. This Recital I had from his own mouth.

The General having done this and ſeveral other eminent Services for the Company, and acquitted himſelf with Reputation and a fair Eſtate, was deſirous to return home, where the Prince of *Orange*, and ſeveral of the States had no leſs a deſire to ſee him. Streight he took up his Habitation at the *Hague*, and for a good while liv'd ſplendidly, gave great Preſents and Entertainments to the Prince, and ſeveral other Grandees of *Holland*, by which means he ran himſelf into ſo great an Expence, that he was forc'd to deſire of the Company, that he might return into their Service.

One day the Prince of *Orange* asking him what Rarities he had brought out of the *Indies*, he call'd for five Silver Plates, and ſetting them upon the Table, drew out five little Bags out of his Pocket, and emptied a ſeveral Bag upon a ſeveral Plate; which ſurpriz'd not onely the Prince, but ſeveral others of the States then preſent, to ſee ſuch a number of Diamonds and other Jewels of a vaſt value.

It was not without ſome difficulty that he was again entertain'd by the Company; but at length they ſent him Admiral of two Ships to *Batavia*, where being arriv'd, the General and Conſuls made him Admiral of the Fleet that was juſt bound for the Coaſt of *Coromandel*, *Surat*, and *Perſia*.

Being return'd to *Batavia*, General *Vandyme* and the Council ſent him to *Malaca*, which the *Hollanders* then beſieg'd, and where they found a ſtouter reſiſtance than they imagin'd. There in an aſſault upon the Town he received a ſlight Wound, of which he was quickly cur'd; but ſoon after he fell ſick, and died before the Town was ſurrendred.

CHAP. V.

Of the Country about Cochin, *and how the* Holland *General crown'd one of the* Indian *Princes.*

ALL the Countrey about *Cochin* is planted for the moſt part with that ſort of Tree which they call *Cocos*, the Fruit whereof produces that ſort of Wine which the Inhabitants call *Tary*, whereof they make their Strong Water. They mingle this Wine with courſe black Sugar unrefin'd, together with the Bark of a Tree which bears nothing but Thorns. This Bark cauſes the *Tary* and Sugar to boil and ferment like new Wine. When the *Tary* and the Sugar have fermented for above ſeven or eight hours, they diſtill them in an Alembic, and make Strong Water, which is ſtronger or ſmaller, by how much the more often or ſeldomer it is diſtill'd.

Beſides the Coverture of theſe Trees the whole Country is full of Cows; for they are all Idolaters in this Country, that onely worſhip their Cows for their Gods, feed upon their Milk, and eat nothing that has Life.

When you leave the Countries of theſe Princes, which they call *Rajas*, travelling toward the North East you enter into the Territories of the *Raja* of *Velouche*, which are of a large extent. He and all his Subjects being Idolaters, unleſs it be about nine or ten thouſand poor People call'd *Chriſtians of S. John*, as being baptiz'd after the ſame manner that S. *John* baptiz'd the People in the Wilderneſs.

After the taking of *Cochin*, of which we have given a full Relation in our *Indian* Travels, General *Vangous*, who commanded at the Siege, became ſo haughty that he deſpis'd all the other Officers, as well Military as thoſe that belonged to the Government and Juſtice of the City. However to recompence one of the *Raja's* by whoſe means he had taken the City, he perſuaded him to quit the Name of *Raja*, and to aſſume the Title of *King*, that he might have the Honour to ſet the Crown upon his Head. To this end he made great inquiry through his whole Army for a Gold-

ſmith,

ſmith, and having found out one that undertook it, and caus'd him to make a Crown of maſſie Gold, that weigh'd near ten Marks, which I believe the *Raja* found more inconvenient and weighty upon his Head, than an old Muckender with three corners bound about his Head, which is the mark of the *Raja's* Sovereignty.

While they were making this Crown there were great preparations for the Ceremony: It was performed in a Garden near the Town, where was ſet a large Tent ſpread all over with painted Calicut. Within was a Throne erected with a Canopy of *China* Damask, and all the Steps to the Throne were cover'd with *Perſian* Tapiſtry.

The day being come, the greateſt part of the Army, Officers and Souldiers, went to fetch the *Raja*, who lay in his Hut a quarter of a League off; where they mounted him upon one of two Elephants which the General ſent him, being attended likewiſe with two led Horſes, and two *Palanquins* for more State. Being come to the place, he was clad in a Scarlet Robe with great Hanging Sleeves, and ſo brought in where *Vangous* was ſitting upon his Throne, with a Sword and a Crown by him. The *Raja* being come to the Foot of the Throne, the Major of the Army took the Sword, deliver'd him by the General, and girt the *Raja*, who then aſcending the Steps of the Throne, proſtrated himſelf before the *Holland* General while he put the Crown upon his Head. Then the new King riſeth up, and lays his Hand upon the Head of a Cow that ſtood near the Throne. Which done, kneeling with his Hands claſp'd, and lifted toward the Head of the ſame Cow, he took his Oath to be true and faithful to the Company, and to embrace their Intereſts. On the other ſide the General promis'd him on the behalf of the Company, that they ſhould aſſiſt him when he ſhould have occaſion againſt his Enemies. Which Solemnities being very gravely perform'd, the Muſquettiers gave three Volleys, and the new King was conducted back to his Hut with the ſame Pomp that he was brought. Thus you ſee the Pride of a Pepper Merchant, to make Kings and domineer over Crowns.

One other famous Act of *Vangous* muſt not be forgotten. You muſt know, that at the taking of *Cochin* the Jeſuits had in that City one of the faireſt Libraries in all *Aſia*, as well

for the great quantity of Books sent them out of *Europe*, as for several rare Manuscripts in the *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, *Arabic*, *Persian*, *Indian*, *Chinese*, and other Oriental Languages. For in all the Conquests of the *Portugals*, their first care was to summon all the Learned People of the several Nations, and to get all their Books into their hands. During that little time which the Jesuits staid in *Æthiopia* they had copied out all the good Books that came to their knowledge, and sent all those Books to *Cochin*. They had staid longer in *Æthiopia*, had it not been for the Jealousie of the Patriarchs, and their Bishops, which are very numerous; so that if there be two men in one Village that belong to one Church, the chiefest calls himself Bishop. At their Ceremonies of Baptism when they name the Holy Ghost, they apply a hot Iron to the neck of the Infant, saying that the Holy Ghost descended upon the Apostles in the shape of Fiery Tongues. The Patriarchs and Bishops were jealous of the Jesuits, finding that they had insinuated themselves into the favour of the King and Grandees of the Court. Which so enraged the *Æthiopians*, that they caus'd the People to mutiny, preaching that the King was about to alter the Religion of the Country, and to draw along with him several of the Lords. And the Fury of the People grew to that height, that whatever the King could do or say, he could not appease their Fury: So that they put him in prison, and elected his Brother in his place. The cause of this disorder was laid upon the Jesuits, and was the reason that they were expell'd the Kingdom; neither had they scap'd so, but that they were afraid of the Governour of *Mozambique*, and the *Portugals* that inhabit all along the Coast of *Africa*. But to tell ye what became of this Library, General *Vangous* made no conscience to expose it to the ignorance of his Souldiers, so that I have seen the Souldiers and Seamen tear several of those beautiful Volums to light their Tobacco.

CHAP.

CHAP. VI.

Of the Sieur Hollebrand Glins, *Preſident of the Factory at* Ormus.

WHen the Ships come to *Ormus*, it is a great prejudice for the Goods to lie out of doors. For ſuch is the extremity of the Heat in that part, that if the Spices, eſpecially the Cloves, be not carried to the Water-ſide every foot, and there laid to ſteep in the Water for four and twenty hours, they would turn to a mere powder.

Sugar is brought thither in great Wooden Cheſts, but if there be the leaſt Cleft for a Fly or an Emmet to get in, in a ſmall time the Cheſt will be half emptied.

As for Camphire, which is brought from *Borneo* in Pipes, if it lie a little too long in that warm Air, it will exhale above half away.

To remedy theſe Inconveniences *Sieur Hollebrand* reſolved to build a bigger Warehouſe. Among the reſt of the Workmen that were imployed in this Building was a Gunſmith, who came in the *interim* in a Ship from *Batavia*. This poor Fellow was imployed to make Locks for the Warehouſe; for in thoſe Parts they have no other Keys, or Locks either, than what are made of Wood: So that it was a Crime for him to be found idle at any time. And therefore the Preſident finding him one Sunday in the Afternoon drinking with two of his Companions that came from the Ship to ſee him, gave the Fellow half a dozen good Licks with his Cane, and would have given him more, but that the Smith being a ſturdy Fellow, and feeling the Blows ſmart, wreſted the Stick out of the Preſident's Hands, and flung it out of the Window. For which the Preſident, upon pretence that the Fellow had ſtruck him four Blows, which was untrue, as I my ſelf being there could witneſs, ſent him laden with Chains to the Ship, where he would have tried him for his Life, in a full Court of the Merchants of the Factory: but they refuſing him, for very madneſs he took

two

two Notaries, that he had a power over, went to the Ship alone, made the Officers of the Ship, and condemn'd the Fellow to be hang'd. And he had certainly been executed but for me and ſome other of my Countrymen, (for the Fellow was of *Geneva*) that threatned the Preſident out of his deſign. Yet he caus'd him to be drubb'd Naked at the Main Maſt after that inhuman manner, that he loſt the uſe of one of his Arms. This the *Geneveſe* could never forget, and therefore ſought all opportunities to kill him; to which purpoſe he put himſelf in the ſame Ship with *Hollebrand* when he returned for *Holland*. But coming to the *Cape of Good Hope*, and being ſent aſhoar in the Shallop for Proviſions, the Shallop was overſet in a ſtormy Sea, and *Hollebrand*'s Life thereby ſecur'd.

But before we leave *Ormus*, where *Hollebrand* was building his Warehouſe that caus'd all this miſchief, let us take notice of this by the way, that there is no abiding at *Ormus* till *April*, leſt you pay for your ſtay with ſome Malignant Fever, that may hold a man as long as he lives; or if he be cur'd by chance, yet will the White of his Eyes be more yellow than Saffron. This ſame ſort of Fever ſeizes our *Europeans* in the Port of *Alexandretta* in *Syria*, and in the Iſlands where the *Hollanders* lade their Cloves, Nutmegs, and Mace.

By the way obſerve, that there is a particular ſort of Nutmeg which the *Hollanders* call *Maneque*, and we the Male Nutmeg, as long again and a little bigger than the ordinary Nutmeg; and this ſort they never carry into *Europe*, becauſe they ſell it to better profit in *Perſia* and the *Indies*. This I ſhall alſo further add, that the ordinary Nutmeg condited, fuddles more than the ſtrongeſt Wine, eating but onely one either at the beginning or ending of the Meal.

CHAP.

CHAP. VII.

Touching the Islands of the Prince.

THE Fort of *Batavia* has four fair Bastions, and is well built but upon an ill Foundation, those Bastions being plainly observ'd to sink, and requiring Reparation from time to time. For the perfecting of which Work the *Hollanders* wanted Slaves: whereupon a Consultation was had where to get Slaves. To which Answer was made, that there was no better place than the Prince's Islands. Which being concluded, the General of *Batavia* dispatch'd away three the biggest Ships belonging to *Batavia*. These Ships visited every one of these Islands, feigning that they came from *Holland* and wanted Refreshment. So soon as the Inhabitants discover'd the Vessels, they flock'd to the Shoar Men, Women, and Children, as they wont to do, bringing along with them the best of their Provision, as *Coco* Wine, Nuts, and other Fruits of the growth of the Islands. Happy were they that could first get aboard, for they always get more by the Mariners and Souldiers, than by those that go ashoar to trade. Now so soon as they were ashoar, they gave them Strong Water to drink till they were drunk, and when the Masters of the Ships saw them in that condition, they immediately sent a good number of their men well armed ashoar, who bound them that were upon the Sand to truck for their goods, and carried them away to their Ships, killing all those that made any resistance. But they did them little service; for finding themselves so inhumanly us'd as the *Hollanders* use their Slaves, they took a resolution to eat nothing, and to starve themselves to death, rather than to be forc'd to labour and be beaten every day.

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

How the Hollanders *ſent to declare War againſt the* Perſians, *and of the ill Succeſs of their Fleet.*

MUch about the ſame time *Charles Conſtant* was ſent by the Company with a Fleet of ſeven great Ships, to declare War againſt the *Perſians*, in caſe they would not comply with the *Dutch* in reference to their Silk Trade and their Cuſtoms. Being arriv'd at *Ormus* he left the Fleet there, and haſten'd to *Iſpahan*, and from thence to *Casbin*, where then the King was. But his Embaſſie had not that effect as he expected: For he thought that the King would have been frighted at the noiſe of a Fleet of ſeven great Ships that lay at *Ormus*, but he was miſtaken. For the *Perſian* knew he need not ſend any Force againſt the ſaid Fleet, in regard it would be ruin'd without: It being impoſſible for our *Europeans* to ſtay at *Ormus* in the heat of Somer, as well by reaſon of the Heat, as for want of Water; for there is no good Water at *Ormus*, nor upon any part of the Coaſt of *Perſia*, but what is kept in Ciſterns, and that full of Worms. 'Tis true, that upon the Coaſt of *Arabia* there are Wells of good Water, but when the *Arabians* diſcover any Ships upon the Coaſt, they come down all in Arms to defend their Wells; for it is their profit to ſell their Water, and that at a very dear rate, to thoſe that are in neceſſity.

Now the King and Council not being ignorant, that the longer the Fleet lay at *Ormus*, the worſe would be its condition, would not give the Commander his firſt Audience in two moneths. During which time there died above half the Men; for from ſix a clock in the morning till four in the afternoon, if any of the Seamen went to take a little Air upon the Deck, he preſently fell down dead. The Admiral was to blame not to make proviſion of Water being bound for ſuch a place as *Ormus*.

The Commander *Conſtant* did not take the right courſe to effect his buſineſs, by publiſhing what he intended to pre-

ſent

ſent the Miniſters of State withall. For the Lords of *Perſia* never take any Preſents themſelves, for fear it ſhould come to the King's Ear. But there is a private Bill ſent to the Party for whom it is intended, and he ſends whom he thinks fit to receive it. Had he ſo done, and doubled his Sum of 5000 *Venetian* Ducats, perhaps the *Athemadoulet* might have us'd him more kindly, eſpecially for ſo long time as that King had. For whatever a Predeceſſor does, a Succeſſor changes many things. So that if the deceaſed King have given any Houſe or Land to any perſon, it muſt be confirmed by the ſucceeding King in his firſt Year, or elſe the Gift returns to the King. It is the ſame thing if any perſon builds a Houſe upon the King's Demeſns: which has been a great inconvenience to the *Auſtin* Friers and bare-foot *Carmelites*, becauſe their Houſes are built upon the Lands which *Cha Abbas* gave them of the Royal Demeſns. So that every time a new King aſcends the Throne, they are forc'd to make the *Athemadoulet* new Preſents, ſometimes to the Value of the Land: for it is a rare thing to find a prime Miniſter that is a Friend to the Chriſtians But the Jeſuits and Capuchins, who came after them, provided better for themſelves, each of thoſe Orders having bought the Ground upon which their Houſes are built.

The Commander ſeeing that he could not compaſs his Deſign, and that the *Athemadoulet* would abate nothing of the forty four *Tomans* which he demanded, went to the *Divanbegai* and told him, that buying the ſame Goods of particular perſons, they might be had for thirty two, or at moſt for thirty three *Tomans*. To which the *Divanbegai* anſwered him, That all thoſe particular perſons paid the King Cuſtom, and Convoy upon the Road, the Cuſtom alone amounting to Eighteen *per cent.* which the *Hollanders* did not pay: and that there was not a Year wherein they did not bring in Goods to the Value of 30000 *Tomans*; and that if account ſhould be taken of the Silks which they carried away, and of the Goods which they brought in, the *Athemadoulet* ought to make them pay near 50000 *Tomans* for Duties. The Commander ill ſatisfied with this Anſwer went to his Lodging, and without asking the Advice of the Merchants that were with him, or of his *Frenchman*, who better underſtood the Practice of the Court, or without taking his

leave of the King, return'd privately to *Iſpahan*, intending for *Bander* where the Fleet lay. The *Athemadoulet* being advertiz'd of his ſudden departure, was very much offended; ſo much the more becauſe at the Commanders firſt Arrival he had done him great Civilities, even to the furniſhing his Lodgings after the *European* manner, with a Bed, Stools, and Tables. Thereupon he gave notice thereof to the King, who when he heard of it utter'd theſe words, *Has any one given him any diſtaſte, or is he turn'd Fool? He ſhall be glad to come back again.*

Being come to *Iſpahan*, to the great wonder of the *Franks*, who heard nothing of his taking leave of the King, he began to make up his Pack, intending for *Gomrom*, in caſe the King did not ſend for him again; which he did, 'tis true, but not with thoſe Compliments which he expected; for he flatter'd himſelf that the King would have petition'd him to return. The King ſent for him indeed, but his Compliment was not very pleaſing; for the perſon that brought the Meſſage told him, That it was the King's pleaſure he ſhould ſpeedily return, and if he would not go willingly he had order to carry him by force. But notwithſtanding the King's Command and the Counſel of his Friends, he ſet out from *Iſpahan* for *Bander*, according to his firſt intent. We accompanied him ſome part of his way, and being juſt ready to take our leaves, we ſaw a *Perſian* Gentile and well mounted, (he was a Captain of an hundred men) who calling the Interpreter to him, Go (ſaid he) and tell thy Preſident, that he muſt return to his Lodging, and to morrow make haſte to the King, according to the Order he has already received: and with that he rode away full ſpeed. The Interpreter told the Commander what the Captain ſaid; but notwithſtanding all this the Commander being a perſon of a hot and obſtinate humour, continued his way. Neither the Merchants of *Zulpha*, nor any of the *Perſian* or *Armenian* Servants would follow him, fearing the Baſtinado, and believing he was ſecure enough; as it happen'd: for he had not rode far, before three Captains with their Bows and Arrows in their hands bolted out upon him, one of which riding up directly to the Commander, Art thou (ſaid he) the onely perſon that ever ſet foot in this Empire, that refuſeſt to obey the Companion of the Sun, whom ſo great a part

of

of the World obeys? At the ſame time came up fifty ſtout Horſemen, and one of them who cammanded them made at Mr. *Conſtant* with his Mace. Then the Admiral was forc'd to lower his Sails and return back, forc'd to receive an Affront which he might have avoided When he was come to his Lodging, the *Perſian* Officer without alighting call'd the Interpreter, and bid him go forwarn the Commander in the Name of the King, that neither he nor any of the *Hollanders* preſumed to ſtir out of their Houſes till further order; for that if any of them were ſeen abroad, they ſhould be taught to obey the King's Commands. Thus the *Hollanders* having been coop'd up nine days, word was brought the Commander he might return to *Cusbin*, where he found that all his *Rodomontado's* ſignified nothing, but that he muſt comply with the *Athemadoulet*.

CHAP. IX.

Of the Severity of the Holland *Commanders in the* Indies.

GEneral *Speck*, before he came to his Imployment, had a Daughter by a Woman which he kept onely as his Miſtreſs, not as his Wife. After his time was out he returned into *Holland*, and not being willing to carry his Daughter along with him, knowing that ſhe would go off better at *Batavia* than in *Holland*, left her to the care of General *Com*, who ſucceeded him in his charge. The Girl was fair and left rich, ſo that her Father was no ſooner gone, but ſhe had many Suitors that courted her, without any conſideration of her Birth, among all which there was none that ſhe fancied, like one that was a Superior Merchant of the Fort, for whom ſhe had a particular eſteem. Neither did ſhe believe but that General *Com* would have given his conſent upon the firſt requeſt, knowing the young man to be of a good Family. Nevertheleſs they were both deceiv'd; for being ask'd, he utterly denied to yield to any

ſuch matter. However, the young Man and the Maid continued their Fidelity to each other, and that with ſuch a cloſe reſpect, that at length the Virgin's Belly began to ſwell. Whereupon ſhe made one of the Ladies of the City acquainted how the caſe ſtood, as alſo of her Council, believing that the General upon notice how Affairs went, would marry her to keep all things private. But ſo ſoon as the Lady had revealed the Myſtery, he was ſo far from anſwering their expectation, that he threw the young Man laden with Fetters into priſon, and ſhut up the young Woman cloſe Priſoner in her Chamber. Next day he call'd a Council, declar'd to them the Matter of Fact, and gave his Opinion, that the young man deſerv'd to loſe his Head, and that the Maid ſhould be whipp'd. The Council were of a contrary Judgment, and advis'd him to reconcile the Miſchance by a Marriage. But notwithſtanding all their perſuaſions the General reſolv'd to have his own humour, the next day privately ſent for the Executioner, and cauſing the young Man and the Maid to be brought into his Hall, commanded the Man's Head to be forthwith ſtruck off, and the Virgin to be whipp'd though big with Child.

The Sieur *Goyre* commanded the *Holland* Fleet that was ſent to the *Manilles*, he landed all his Souldiers, and moſt of his Mariners. When they began to march, he commanded that not a man ſhould ſtir out of his Rank upon pain of death. It happen'd that a young Souldier, who was troubled with the Bloudy Flux, ſtept a little aſide to eaſe Nature, which the ſaid Commander perceiving, caus'd him to be apprehended and bound, and calling a Council of War would have had him hang'd; and when the Officers refus'd to give Sentence againſt one that had committed no offence, he cauſed ſeven or eight Blacks of the Low Countries to hang him up upon a Tree. But the Sieur *Dirk Hogel*, Lieutenant General, marching by in the nick of time, and ſeeing the poor Fellow in that condition, preſently order'd him to be cut down, and ſo ſav'd the poor Fellow's Life; who returning into *Holland*, and making his Complaint to the Company, the Directors wrote ſmartly to the General and Council at *Batavia* about the buſineſs; who upon Examination of the matter, in regard the Lad was ſent by the Directors of the Orphans Houſe at *Amſterdam*, condemned the Sieur *Goyre*

to

to pay four thouſand Crowns to the Orphans Houſe, and three hundred Crowns yearly to the poor Souldier.

CHAP. X.

Touching the Women.

OFttimes when Women think that their Amours are moſt ſecret, they are by ſome ſtrange and unexpected accident odly diſcover'd. While I was at *Batavia*, the Secretary of the Hoſpital, as handſom a perſon as any was in the City, had a Wife that paſs'd for a *Batavian* Beauty, neither indeed was ſhe deſpicable. This Couple had been ſeven years married without any Children; ſo that the Woman deſpairing of her Husband's Abilities, and to know where the fault lay, reſolved to beſtow her Favours upon one of her Slaves, who was well ſhap'd but very black; chuſing rather a private Familiarity with him, than with any young *Hollander*, whoſe frequent Viſits might breed ſuſpicion. It ſeems the fault did not lie in her, for her Sable Gallant had ſo improv'd his Talent, that in a ſhort time ſhe found the effects of Change. In ſhort, the Womans Belly ſwell'd, and her Husband thinking his time had been come, began to boaſt of his Manhood, and great Joy there was among the Friends of the Woman upon the hopes of Iſſue. Great Proviſions were made againſt the Lying in, and the General himſelf made choice of for Godfather. But when the good hour was come, and the Woman delivered, their Joy was turned into Mourning, for the Child prov'd one of the ſooty Of-ſpring of the Sun-burnt race, a perfect Black. The Husband and Mother of the Woman bluſh'd as red for ſhame as the Child was black, and the Goſſips hung down their heads like Bulruſhes: nay the Husband was ſo tranſported with fury, that he could not hide his reſolution to murder his Wife, for bringing ſuch a piece of live Charcole into the world. But he was prevented, and ſecur'd in the Fort by the General, till by the intermiſſion of Friends, who wiſely laid before him the original cauſe of his Wifes

Tranſ-

Tranſgreſſion, they were at length made Friends, and the Slave for having ſhew'd himſelf a Man, was condemn'd to tug at the Oars in the Galleys that go to fetch Stone for the uſe of the City.

Now as a White Woman may bring forth a Black, ſo ſometimes a Black may be deliver'd of a White Child. For at *Baçaim* a *Cafer*'s Wife, as black as himſelf, was deliver'd of a white Child. The *Cafer* ſeeing his Child white, would have immediately fallen upon his Wife and ſtrangled her, had not the good women that aſſiſted at her Labour prevented him, and one of thoſe Goſſips was ſo cunning as to run to the Jeſuits Houſe, who are well reſpected by thoſe Blacks, to deſire Father *Thomas de Bare*, who had a long time been Rector at *Agra*, to come to the *Cafer*'s Houſe. Preſently the Father came with another of the Fraternity, and finding the *Cafer* ſtamping and ſtaring almoſt out of his wits, and in open hoſtility without all reaſon, to appeaſe his fury ask'd him whether he kept any Hens, and whether he had any that were black. The *Cafer* anſwer'd that he did keep Hens, and that he had likewiſe black Hens. Preſently the Father order'd one to be brought him; and then holding it in both his hands before the good Women, Does this Hen (ſaid he to the *Cafer*) lay thee any Eggs? Yes, replied the *Cafer*. Of what colour are they, ſaid the Father? White, anſwer'd the *Cafer*. Well then, ſaid the Father, thou art worſe than thy ſilly Creature, and haſt far leſs reaſon; for if this Hen which is black lay thee white Eggs, why may not thy Wife which is black bring thee a white Child? This Compariſon ſo wrought upon the *Cafer*, who was no Diſputant, that he embrac'd his Wife, kiſs'd his Child, and all was well again. Though for all the Jeſuit's Compariſon it was believ'd that ſome *Portugal* Souldier had quarter'd with his Wife, which was the reaſon of that more than uſual Production.

To conclude, there was a certain woman, the wife of one of the Counſellors of *Batavia*, who had both kindneſs and affection for a Merchant of the Fort, who was both young and handſom. And it is the Cuſtom in that Countrey to be not onely kind but free, ſhe had for ſeveral years ſo well ſupplied his wants, that he was Company for the beſt. It happen'd that this Counſellor was ſent abroad upon

on ſome Negotiation, and ſtaid longer than he thought he ſhould have done. For this reaſon Money grew ſhort with the Lady; ſo that her Gallant coming for a Supply, and ſhe not having ready money to anſwer his Expectations, ſhe gave him a Gold Chain worth 400 Crowns to pawn for his preſent Neceſſities till ſhe could redeem it. But this Fatal Chain was the diſſolution of all their former Love: For the young Gentleman being ſtreighten'd for Money, and finding no perſon that would lend him ſo much Money as he wanted upon it, very fairly goes and offers it to a Goldſmith to ſell. While this unfortunate Lover was driving his Bargain in the Shop, who in the name of ill luck ſhould come by but one of his Miſtreſſes Slaves, and ſpying the Chain in his hand, runs and tells her Patroneſs how ſhe had ſeen her Gallant imploy'd. Who ſurpriz'd that her Gallant ſhould go about to ſell the Chain, when he had onely promis'd to pawn it in private and ſure hands; now (quoth ſhe) all will out, there will be the Devil upon Dun when my Husband comes home; and I forſooth that have liv'd credibly thus long, muſt be the ſport of my Neighbours and the talk of the Town. This produc'd a Duel between Love and Intereſt, wherein Intereſt getting the victory, away ſhe immediately ſends to all the Goldſmiths, to give them notice that ſhe had been robb'd of a Gold Chain, deſiring them to apprehend the Party that brought it. She alſo gave the ſame notice to the chief of the *Chineſes*, and deſir'd the Advocate Fiſcal to make a public Search. Well, by theſe means the Chain was quickly found, and the Merchant whatever he could ſay for himſelf was apprehended and put in priſon; ſoon after he was condemned for a Thief, and ſentenced to row all his life in the Stone Galley, which is the Galley that fetches Stones for the uſe of *Batavia*. But happy for him, General *Vanderlin*'s Lady falling into a hard Labour before the time of Execution, and deſiring his Pardon at ſuch a ſolemn Juncture, eaſily obtain'd it, ſeaſonably recovering him from the Misfortunes of Folly and Neceſſity.

A RELA-

A RELATION OF JAPON,

AND

Of the Cauſe of the Perſecution of the Chriſtians in thoſe ISLANDS.

THE Modern Geographers have made Deſcriptions of *Japon*, by means of ſuch conjectures as they have drawn from the Relations of certain Merchants who have traded in thoſe Countries. But in regard there are very few Merchants who are skilful in *Geography*, as being ſuch who only mind the profit and advantage of their Voyages, thoſe Deſcriptions have prov'd very uncertain. As to the knowledge of the Ancients, in reference to this part of the World, it is no leſs imperfect; and it is but only by conjecture to this day, that we believe the *Abadii* of *Ptolomy* to be that Iſland which is now call'd *Niphon*. That which I could learn of moſt certainty, was by the Relation of ſeveral perſons who have Travell'd theſe parts, that the Empire of *Japon* is at preſent compos'd of ſeveral Iſlands, of which ſome perhaps may not be abſolute Iſlands, but rather *Peninſula's*, and particularly thoſe that make a part of the

Land of *Yesso*, the Inhabitants whereof are Vassals and Tributaries to *Japon*. Nevertheless a *Holland* Pilot, who has been industrious to discover whether the whole Country it self were an Island, or a Continent adjoyning to that vast Tract of Land call'd *Corea*, unknown to this day, in those parts where it extends it self behind *China* to the bottom of *Tartarie Niulhan*, saith, that it is separated from *Japon* by a narrow Sea, which at this day is call'd *The streights of* Sanguar. Through all the Islands of *Japon*, where formerly were accompted to have been 66 Kingdoms, there are three remarkable for their largeness, of which that of largest extent is called *Niphon*, the next *Ximo*, and the third *Xicock*. The *Japonners* accompt it a Journey of twenty seven days from the Province of *Quanto*, to the Country of *Yesso*; and they say farther, that this Country of *Yesso*, in those parts which are remote from the Sea, is so full of inaccessible Mountains, that those *Japonners* who have attempted a discovery by Land, could never accomplish their design, being discourag'd by the length of the Journey, and the difficulties and badness of the ways.

The Island of *Niphon* is four times as big as the other two; and there is also a Mountain therein that vomits up Flames of Fire, like Mount *Etna* in *Sicily*; formerly it was distinguish'd into thirty five Kingdoms, but at this day it is only divided into five parts, the names whereof are *Jamasoit*, *Jetsen*, *Jetsesen*, *Quanto*, and *Ochio*, lying all in order as you travel from West to East. These five parts are again divided into several Provinces. The Island of *Ximo*, or *Saycock*, is situated to the South-West of *Niphon*, being about 160 Leagues in circuit. The Island of *Xicock* is seated by the South of *Niphon*, being about 120 Leagues in compass. The other Islands that lye round about are not so considerable, for in those Seas lye several Islands scatter'd up and down, as in the *Archipelago*, between the *Morea* and the Coasts of *Asia* the less. As to the rest, I refer the Reader to the Map annexed, believing it to be very true, as having been made upon the places themselves.

The Emperour at present keeps his Court in the City of *Yeddo*, in regard the Air is there more temperate, and the Heats not so violent; but when he has a Son that is arriv'd to the Age of fifteen years, he sends him to *Surunga*, there to reside, till the death of his Father makes him way to the Throne.

Since *Yeddo* has been made choice of for the Seat of the Empire, it has so greatly enlarg'd it self from day to day, that it is at present three Leagues in length, and three in breadth, very populous, and the Houses standing very close together. When the Emperour rides through the City, or that there is any publick shew to be seen, it is impossible to get by the crowd of the people, though the Women are not permitted to be of the number. The Emperours Palace is cover'd with Plates of Gold, to which the Palaces of the Lords are every way correspondent in Magnificence; so that afar off the City affords the richest and most magnificent Prospect that was ever beheld: Though it be not so beautiful within, by reason that the ordinary Houses are built only of Wood. The Great *Dairy* keeps his residence at *Meaco*, which is also a very large City, containing above a hundred thousand Houses; it was formerly the capital Seat of the Empire, at what time the *Dairy*'s were laid aside. So soon as he is Crown'd by the *Bonzes*, who are the *Priests* and *Lawyers*, he is then no more to expose himself to the light of the Moon, nor to

shave

ſhave his Head, or cut his Nails. The Natives report, that the Empire of *Japon* was formerly govern'd by a Prince call'd *Dairy*, who had acquir'd ſo high a reputation for Holineſs, that his Subjects ador'd him as a God, and that to increaſe the awe and reverence of the people, he ſuffer'd his Hair and Nails to grow, affirming, that it it was a piece of Sacriledge to make uſe either of Razor or Sizzars. The Princes that ſucceeded him, though they had only the name of Kings, have ſtill preſerv'd the ſame cuſtom, believing that it becomes not their Grandeur to appear in view of the Moon, as being Sons of the *Sun*. If he have a Daughter that is ripe for Marriage, the Emperour is oblig'd to Marry her, and ſhe it is that bears the Title of Empreſs, though ſhe ſhould happen to have no Children, which is contrary to the Maxims of all the Eaſtern Monarchs, who give the Title of Queen and Sultaneſs only to her, among all the reſt of their Wives, that is firſt brought to Bed of a Male Succeſſor to the Crown.

At the end of every ſeven years, the Emperour ſends one of the chief Princes of his Court to the *Dairy* with a Basket full of Earth, and to tell him, that all the Lands which the Emperour commands, are at the *Dairy*'s Devotion; and indeed the Empire belongs to him by right of Succeſſion, though at preſent he enjoys only the Title, and very large Revenues, which render him highly conſiderable in the Empire.

The *Japonners* are Idolaters, and adore the Sun; but though they have a great number of Temples and different Idols, yet they are not over obſtinate in their Devotion, only the Emperour is very ſevere againſt all other Religions. They never ſtir out of their Native Country to travel, unleſs it be to *China*, and the Land of *Yeſſo*; and within theſe few years the Emperour has prohibited his people under extream penalties, from having any Commerce with Foreigners, the *Chineſes* and *Hollanders* excepted. He had receiv'd Ambaſſadours at ſeveral times from ſeveral Princes, but never ſent any of his own to them again. Nevertheleſs it is affirm'd, that ſeveral Lords of theſe Iſlands newly converted to the Faith, in the year 1585, ſent their Children to *Rome*, to render their acknowledgments to *Gregory* the Thirteenth; and that being return'd back in the year 1587, to *Goa*, they were afterwards receiv'd, and welcom'd again into their own Country with great marks of joy. The little inclination which they have to Navigation and Traffick, proceeds in part from the great abundance of all things neceſſary for Human ſupport, which their own Country produces; and then in the next place from the jealouſies of the Emperour, who is afraid of the alterations which new Religions may make in his Government; for they are very fickle, and eaſily ſeduc'd after Novelties, which has been the occaſion of many Revolts, and Civil Wars, till *Quabacondon* wreſted the Empire out of the hands of the *Dairy*, and reunited all the Provinces. They are ſo fiery and revengeful, that upon the leaſt affront given them, if they cannot have an opportunity of a preſent revenge, they will rip up their own Bellies, and kill themſelves. I was told a Story to confirm this. Two young Lords that ſerv'd the Emperour met in the Palace, and joſtl'd one the other by accident; the moſt furious of the two was immediately for drawing his Sword. The other told him, the place was not convenient, that he was going to wait; but that if he would ſtay for him in ſuch a place, he would give him ſatisfaction. Accordingly the party that thought himſelf affronted went and ſtay'd, but

his impatience was such, that after he had stay'd awhile, not finding the other to come, he ripp'd up his own Bowels for very vexation. Upon which the people crowding about him, ask'd him the reason of his killing himself; to which they could draw no other answer but this, *A cowardly Raskal has affronted me.* By and by the other comes, makes way through the throng, and surpriz'd with what he beheld; *Poor Creature*, said he, *thou need'st not have doubted my being as good as my word, this Dagger shall assure thee of it:* And so saying, he kill'd himself upon the place, and fell by the others side.

There is no Nation under Heaven that fears Death less than this, or that is more enclin'd to cruelty. If any Prince or great Lord makes a Feast for his Friends, at the end of the Feast he calls his principal Officers, and asks 'em, if there be any that has so much love for him as to kill himself before the Guests for his sake. Presently there arises a dispute among them who shall have the Honour; and who ever the Prince is pleas'd to name, rips up his Belly with a *Cric*, which is a kind of Dagger, the poynt whereof is Poyson'd. This custom is also practis'd upon the Death of their Masters, or when they lay the Foundations of any Palace; for they are so superstitious as to believe, that these Victims are necessary to render both the Owners of the Building, and the Habitation fortunate.

They punish all manner of Theft with Death. 'Tis also a capital Crime among them to play for Money. Adultery is only punish'd in the Women: But Coynage of false Money, setting Houses on Fire, Deflowring and Ravishing of Virgins, are not only punish'd in the persons of the Criminals, but also of those who are next of kin to them. The Women live retir'd, and are very faithful to their Husbands. The Emperour having put to Death one of the Lords of his Court, out of hopes to enjoy his Wife; she fearing violence, besought the Emperour to give her time to consider, which was granted for some few days. At the end whereof she shut her self up in a Room with her Children; and after she had delivered a Paper to one of her Servants to carry to the Emperour, she set the Chamber a Fire, and burnt both her self and her Children. The Emperour met with nothing else in the Paper but reproaches of his Tyranny, and attestations of joy from the Lady, that she had the opportunity to Sacrifice her self to the memory of her Husband. Several other stories I have heard, which make me believe, that this Nation is not uncapable of doing actions worthy a *Roman* Vertue.

The *Portugals* were the first people of *Europe* that discover'd the Islands of *Japon*. They were thrown upon the Coast by a violent Storm, in the year 1542, and understanding that there was great store of Gold and Silver in the Country, they return'd with a resolution to settle themselves. The first place where they thought to fix was neer *Simunga*, a City which stands about four Leagues from the Sea: But because there is but one Road, and that not very secure neither for Shipping, they remain'd there not above five years. At length they took possession of a little forsaken Island call'd *Kisma*, which they peopl'd afterward's; but since the last Persecution of the Christians, the *Portugals* were forc'd to abandon it, having no more Commerce with the *Japoniers*. How the *Hollanders* came to erect their Factories there, I shall tell the Reader in another part of this Relation.

Seven

Seven years after the firſt coming of the *Portugals* to *Japon*, St. *Francis Xavier* made a Voyage thither to Preach the Goſpel. The firſt place where he Landed was the Iſland of *Niphon*, where he ſtay'd two years and ſome Months, and travel'd ſeveral parts of theſe Iſlands; but his principal deſign being to go to *China*, he took ſhipping accordingly. The Veſſel was no ſooner out at Sea, but St. *Francis* fell ſick, ſo that the Captain put him aſhore again in the Iſland of *Sechen*, by others call'd *Huynan*, belonging to *China*, where in a few days after he dy'd, and never was in *China*, as ſome have reported and believ'd.

After his death the Chriſtian Religion ſpread it ſelf very much in *China*, the people being very docible, and apprehenſive of the inſtructions which were given them; but the behaviour of the *Portugals* diſpleaſing the Principal Governours, and thoſe who had moſt Power at Court, they did them ill Offices to the Emperour; and the *Bonzes* miſliking the new Religion, and jealous of the effects thereof, were the fomenters of continual perſecutions againſt the new Converts, pretending they favour'd the deſigns of the *Portugueſes*.

Nevertheleſs the Chriſtian Religion daily got footing, and perhaps the whole Nation would have embrac'd it, if the covetouſneſs and wickedneſs of the Chriſtians themſelves had not been the chief impediment of their converſion. The *Hollanders* did all they could to lay the fault upon the *Portugals*, but the truth will eaſily appear by the Letter written to one *Leonard Campen*, a *Hollander*, wherein it is ſaid, that when the *Hollanders* were ask'd by the Natives what Religion they were of, they made this anſwer, *We are no Chriſtians, we are* Hollanders. I do not go about to blemiſh a whole Nation for the fault of a few, but only to ſhew what a dangerous thing it is, to make an ill choice of Officers upon the ſetling of a new Commerce in Regions ſo remote.

The *Holland Eaſt-India* Company having ſet out a Veſſel for *Batavia*, put aboard about a dozen young Boys, and as many Girls, taken out of the Hoſpitals in the Country. Among theſe Boys there was one who was deſign'd to ſerve in the Kitchin, but Fortune made him an inſtrument of one of the greateſt Misfortunes that ever befell our Age. During the Voyage, the Merchant having obſerv'd him to be a Boy of a ready wit, and for that reaſon believing that he might one day prove ſerviceable to the *Holland* Company, caus'd him to be taught to write and read; wherein he improv'd ſo well in a ſhort time, that being come to *Batavia*, he was thought capable of a higher Employment. The Veſſel being arriv'd, the General and his Council reſolv'd to ſend the ſame Veſſel to *Japon*, with ſome part of the Lading which was brought from *Europe*. Thereupon the Merchant was commanded upon this Voyage, and the under Accomptant happening in the mean time to dye, this Boy was by him advanc'd to the place, and by the Merchant carefully inſtructed in the knowledge of the *Eaſt-India* Trade.

The Veſſel being arriv'd at *Firando*, the new under Accomptant believing no place more proper for him then that to raiſe his fortune, reſolv'd to leave his Benefactor, and therefore when the Ship was to return, he hid himſelf out of the way; till he knew the Ship to be far enough onward on her Voyage, and by that means becoming a Member of the Factory, he grew ſo perfect in the Language of the Natives, and ſo uſeful to the Company, that in length he came to be Preſident of the Factory; the Authority of which Employment ſo puff'd him up,

up, that he was not only for continuing and upholding the Commerce of his own, but excluding all other Nations. Now, as I have already obſerv'd, the *Portugals* were the firſt Traders, and the firſt that propagated the Chriſtian Religion in thoſe parts; therefore it was that the Chriſtian *Japonners* would not Trade with any but the *Portugals*, as having known them longer, and finding them more true to their words. This the Preſident obſerv'd, and made it his buſineſs to render them obnoxious at Court, and by vertue of his Preſents, engag'd the Governours of Provinces, and other great Lords, to favour his deſign.

However, the *Portugals* wanted neither friends nor confederates. And though they were not in a condition to be ſo liberal as the Preſident, yet they made ſhift to defend themſelves, and render his under hand Dealings ineffectual. Thereupon finding that thoſe Tricks would not take, he had recourſe to the fouleſt of Calumnies; for he counterfeited a Letter written in the *Portugueſe* Language, containing a diſcovery of a deſign of the Chriſtian *Japonners* to have made a general Inſurrection, and a particular Conſpiracy againſt the perſon of the Emperour. This Letter he carry'd to a Lord of the Country, into whoſe favour and confidence he had wrought himſelf, who preſently thought it to be his duty to give intelligence of ſo important a deſign to the Court.

The Preſident inform'd him by what accident the Letter came to his hands, and gave an account of ſuch circumſtances, as made his Impoſture look with a probable countenance, relating, how that the *Hollanders* had taken a *Portugal* Veſſel returning from *Japon* to *Goa*, and that the *Holland* Captain having taken this Letter among other Papers, open'd it, and perceiving of what conſequence it was, had ſent an Expreſs to the Preſident to proceed as his prudence, and the affection of the *Dutch* Company toward the Emperour ſhould guide him. That the *Portugals*, who were but Subjects to the *Spaniards*, had a pernicious Maxim, not to ſuffer any Religon but their own in any place where they had to do, and that for their own ends they never ſpar'd either the Life or Liberty of Man; that they thought it an acceptable Sacrifice to God, to cut the Throats of thoſe whom they could not convert. And laſtly, that the *Hollanders* were a people that accorded with all Nations and Religions, and minded nothing but their Trade.

The Lord believ'd all theſe fraudulent Calumnies, and ſent a Copy of the Letter to the Emperour, the ſubſtance whereof was, That the *Spaniards* in the *Philippine* Iſlands, and the *Portugals* in *Japon*, being in confederacy with the Chriſtians of the Country, had ſent to the Governour of *Goa* to ſend by a time prefix'd eight or ten Veſſels, with Men and Arms, but eſpecially a good number of Officers to command the Revolters, for that then there would be a numerous Army ready, and that they ſhould eaſily make themſelves Maſters of *Japon*.

The *Portugals* were then under the Dominion of the *Spaniard*, and though they would ſuffer no *Spaniard* in their *Indian* Acquiſitions but the Viceroy, yet ſeveral of the Religious Orders did ſlip into *Japon*; carried thither by a true and real zeal; yet this zeal, when once indiſcreet, does as much miſchief as covetouſneſs it ſelf. The Father *Pauliſts*, for ſo they call the *Jeſuits* in the *Indies*, by reaſon that their Church in *Goa* is dedicated to St. *Paul*; theſe *Jeſuits* I ſay, had made a fair progreſs, and gain'd great credit among the people, notwithſtanding their

their continual perſecutions, according as the Lords of the Country were well or ill affected towards them. Their number therefore encreas'd, and the new Converts had this advantage, that they enrich'd themſelves by Trading with the *Portugals*, who had made a poſitive Agreement not to Trade with the *Bonzes*. This provok'd the *Bonzes* againſt them, and the multitude of the Chriſtians ſo far augmented the Emperour's jealouſies and fears, that in a ſhort time they produc'd the effects of open rage and cruelty.

The *Jeſuits* had converted to the Faith a great Lord of the Kingdom, who liv'd moſt commonly at *Bugen*, in the Iſland of *Ximo*, a perſon of great Intereſt and Power in the Iſland. He had four Sons, two of which liv'd with him, and following his Example, had embrac'd the Catholick Faith. The Father was Baptiz'd by the name of *Ignatius*; the eldeſt of the two was call'd *Francis*, and the youngeſt *Charles*: the two eldeſt Sons were at Court in great favour with the Emperour. The younger of the two that had embrac'd the Chriſtian Religion, addicted himſelf wholly to the ſtudy of the Scripture, and retir'd with the *Jeſuits* to their Seminary. His Example had wrought with a great number of young Lords, and as he was eloquent beſides, he was of great uſe to the *Jeſuits* in preaching the Goſpel, and reclaiming the people from the groſſneſs of their Errors.

The *Japonners* are naturally endow'd with a noble mind, and great inclination to Learning; ſo that there is nothing wanting in that Nation but able Teachers. Not but that they have Doctors of their own: the *Dairy*'s Court is full of them; where they preſerve the Annals of their Country, and pretend that Printing and Artillery were in uſe among them before they were known in *Europe*. From this Court come all their Books, in regard the perſons that attend upon this Prince apply themſelves only to their Studies. It is reported, that they learnt all theſe things by their frequent Commerce with the *Chineſes*, and that they are alſo originally deſcended from them. And in truth, the greateſt Province of the Iſland of *Niphon* is call'd *Quanto*, according to the name of the Sea-Coaſt part of *China*, where lies the greateſt Traffick between the *Japonners* and *Chineſes*. Moreover, if there be any credit to be given to the *Chineſe* Hiſtories, they ſay it was but a ſmall part of their vaſt Empire, which extended it ſelf from North to South 56 Degrees of Latitude, from the Frozen Sea to the Equinoctial Line, being bounded to the Weſt by the *Caſpian* Sea, and extending Eaſtward over all the Southern *America* to *New Spain*.

Father *Thomas Barr*, a *Portugueſe*, has often told me when I was at *Agra*, a capital City of the *Great Mogul*, where the *Jeſuits* have a very fair Houſe, that this and ſeveral other young Lords improv'd themſelves ſo far in ſix or ſeven years, that they were as Learned as their Maſters themſelves, and that they were more zealous in converting thoſe of their Nation. Now the *Jeſuits* at that time had no Houſe for the Inſtruction of Youth and Proſelytes, and therefore they deſir'd this young Lord to lend them one of his. Thereupon he having four very fair ones, with great Revenues belonging to them, gave that which was neareſt to the City to his Converters. A while after, the youngeſt of his Sons fell ſick, and was carried to this Houſe for the Air's ſake, where he recover'd by the care of the Fathers, and the Prayers of the Chriſtians; but his Father did not long enjoy the pleaſure of ſo great

a Cure, which ſeem'd almoſt miraculous; for he dy'd at what time both his Sons and the Chriſtians ſtood moſt in need of his protection.

The two eldeſt, who were with the Emperour, underſtanding the the Death of their Father, came to take poſſeſſion of their Inheritance, and demanded of the *Jeſuits* the Houſe which their Father had given them, for in *Japon* no Parent can alienate the Eſtate of his Children; nay, when they come to ſuch an Age, he is oblig'd to put them in poſſeſſion of their Eſtates, reſerving only ſuch a proportion to himſelf. The *Jeſuits*, loth to part with ſo fair a convenience, would not quit their hold, though it were for their own quiet, and to engage the whole Family to ſtand by them in their time of trouble. This refuſal provok'd the two Brethren, and this quarrel between them and the *Jeſuits* happen'd at the ſame time that the *Dutch* Preſident was labouring to bring about his deſigns. He had notice of this diſpute, and as he was a great Impoſtor, he made it his buſineſs to enflame the two Brothers, not only againſt the *Jeſuits*, but againſt the *Portugals* in general, giving them a Copy of the Letter which he had fram'd, as is before-mention'd.

Theſe two Lords, who were Favourites of the Emperour, joyning Intereſt of State to their particular Intereſt, made their complaints at Court, with extraordinary aggravations; urging that there was no ſecurity for the Eſtates of particular Men, for the quiet of the Empire, nor the Life of the Prince, unleſs not only all the *Portugals*, but alſo all the Natives of *Japon*, who had ſuck'd their Errors, were exterminated out of the Iſland. To make good the reaſons of their Exaſperation they ſhew'd the Emperour a Copy of the Letter, and put him into ſuch a fright, as well for his Perſon, as the Empire, that he would admit of no juſtification on the other ſide.

Some of his Lords, who were Friends to the *Portugals*, beſought him to examin the truth of what was alledg'd, before he proceeded to utmoſt extremities againſt a whole Nation, and againſt his own Subjects. But he was inexorable, and preſently gave private Orders to certain Commiſſioners, to go through all the Provinces of the Empire, and to baniſh not only the *Portugals*, but alſo all the Chriſtian Natives. Now in regard they had their private confederates, as well in the Court, as in other places, they had intelligence, in all parts, of the cruel reſolution tak'n againſt them, though none were more zealous and faithful to them then the two Lords of *Ximo*, *Francis* and *Charles*. Thereupon the Chriſtians met together to conſult for their own ſafety, and their common preſervation, and ſeeing all attempts to juſtifie themſelves prove ineffectual, they reſolv'd to ſtand upon their guards, and to dye in the defence of their Innocency and Religion. The two Lords put themſelves at the head of the Chriſtians Army, the elder of which had been a Souldier, and underſtood the Art of War; the younger kept up their Spirits and Courages by his continual Exhortations.

The Emperour's Commiſſioners underſtanding that the Chriſtians were thus embody'd, gave him ſpeedy notice thereof, but ſaid nothing either of the number of their Forces, or of their deſigns. The *Jeſuits* and *Auſtin Fryars* at *Goa*, told me, that the Army of the Chriſtians conſiſted of above 40000 Men, beſides thoſe recruits that came up to them before and after the Battel was fought.

The

The Emperour not beleiving that the Army was ſo numerous, ſent againſt them at firſt not above 25 or 30000 Men, under the Command of the youngeſt of the two Lords of *Ximo*, that liv'd at Court. But thoſe Troops were no ſooner upon their March, but he rais'd new Forces, and ſent another Army after them, conſiſting of 40000 Men, commanded by the young Lord, to whom the *Dutch* Preſident had ſhew'd the Letter firſt of all.

The Chriſtians having intelligence of the approach of theſe two Armies, prepar'd to receive them, chooſing an advantagious place to intrench themſelves. The firſt Army ſoon appear'd in ſight of the Chriſtians, who lay ſo encamp'd, that the Imperialiſts could diſcover no more than one part of them. However, before the Engagement, the youngeſt of the Chriſtian Brothers advis'd his other Brother to ſend to the General of the Emperour's Army, who was their Brother likewiſe, to deſire Peace, and to beſeech him to intercede for them to the Emperour, and to aſſure him, that they were ready to lay down their Arms, and throw themſelves at his Feet, and to juſtifie their Innocency. To this purpoſe a Letter was fram'd and ſent to the General, but the Meſſenger that carry'd it was nail'd to a Croſs in ſight of the whole Army of the Chriſtians, and at the ſame time the Enemy came on with great fury to aſſail them.

The Fight laſted almoſt three hours with equal advantage; the Captain of the Imperialiſts ſeeking every where for his Brothers, while they ſtrove to avoid him. The Chriſtians, who knew that all their ſafety conſiſted in their Victory, and that there was otherwiſe no hope of pardon, fought with ſo much valour, that the Imperialiſts were fore'd to give ground. Their General was ſlain upon the place, and at length the whole Army of the Idolaters was cut in pieces.

This Victory wrought the Converſion of ſeveral of the Idolaters; and the Chriſtians, after they had given thanks to God three days together, prepar'd themſelves for a ſecond Combat, not doubting but the other Army would ſet upon them while they were weary, and weaken'd by the laſt Battel. But that General more prudent then the former, only poſted himſelf where the Chriſtians could not come at him, and writ to the Court the particulars of the Defeat of the firſt Army, upon which he expected the Emperour's Orders.

In the mean while, the Army of the Chriſtians daily encreas'd, ſo that in a few days they were above fifty thouſand ſtrong. The Emperour, reſolv'd to ſtifle this Revolt in the beginning, ſent Orders through all his Empire to make new Levies; and all the while the *Dutch* Preſident's Confederates ceas'd not to aggravate him againſt the Chriſtians, not ſuffering the other Courtiers to open his Eyes, and prevent ſo unjuſt a proſecution. The defeat of his Army had put him into ſuch a rage beſides, that though the Captains of the Chriſtians Army did all they could to clear themſelves from the falſe accuſations laid upon them, and to obtain their pardons, there was no poſſibility of being heard.

The Emperour call'd his Council, where the wiſeſt were of opinion, that it would prove the beſt way to receive the ſubmiſſions of the Chriſtians, who offer'd to lay down their Arms upon a general pardon, and the free exerciſe of their Religion. But the Preſident's Cabal carry'd it beyond this ſober advice, and the Emperour, exaſperated by his Impoſtures, took the wrong courſe. Thereupon the Council reſolv'd with

all ſpeed to raiſe a vaſt Army, which was to joyn with the other, and ſo to ruin the Chriſtians all at a blow. The *Dairy* alſo, who is conſulted upon all important affairs, approv'd this Council. Thereupon the Lords who are oblig'd to furniſh the Emperour with Men, ſtrove who ſhould bring their Troops and Companies firſt to the Randevouz appointed, which was neer the place where the ſecond Army lay; ſo that when both Armies were joyn'd together, there was in the Field a Body of 150000 Men. The Brother of the General, who was ſlain in the firſt Battel, commanded under the Emperour, who reſolv'd to go in perſon.

But firſt of all he caus'd a Proclamation to be made in his Camp, whereby he forbad any Quarter to be given to any Chriſtian, unleſs it were the two Brothers, whom he intended to puniſh openly; and that they who left the Field before the Chriſtians were baniſh'd, ſhould be put, they and their Kindred, to the moſt cruel Deaths that could be imagin'd; but that they ſhould be rewarded that brought the Head of a Chriſtian to the Emperour. The Copies of this Proclamation were ſcatter'd in the Army of the Chriſtians, though they did no harm but only encourag'd them againſt the Idolaters, ſeeing there was no hope of pardon.

Nevertheleſs the youngeſt of the two Brothers offer'd to go and throw himſelf at the Emperour's Feet, to implore his clemency in the name of the whole Army; ſaying withall, That he ſhould accompt himſelf happy to ſuffer Martyrdom to ſhew his Innocency; but they would not ſuffer him to ſtir. All he could obtain from them, was to write a Letter full of reſpect, ſubmiſſion, and repentance for what had been already done, declaring that they were ready to lay down their Arms, if the Emperour would grant them pardon, and the free Exerciſe of their Religion, offering with the hazard of their Lives to make out the falſity of all thoſe things wherewith they had been accus'd.

This was by an Idolater carry'd to a certain Lord who ſecretly favour'd the Chriſtians; but the Emperour toar it without reading it, vowing at the ſame time, that he would never return to his Court 'till the Idolaters were all extirpated. The Chriſtian Army underſtanding the Emperour's reſolution, minded nothing more then their own defence. 'Tis true, the Ground where they lay was advantagious enough for the ſmallneſs of their Number, but the Idolaters were three to one; beſides that the Idolaters of the Country, who favour'd the Chriſtians before, now declar'd all againſt them ſo ſoon as they ſaw the Imperial Army. So that now both Armies lying ſo near together, ſeveral hot Skirmiſhes paſs'd between 'em; and at length it came to a general Battel. At firſt the Chriſtians overthrew the Idolaters, not able to ſtand before them: with ſo much vigour did the youngeſt of their Chieftains aſſail them. He was remarkable for his Habit that day, but more remarkable for his courage; ſo that the Field was cover'd with the Bodies of the ſlain, fear and dread poſſeſſing the yielding Enemy. But while the Victor forgot his Brother's advice, and purſu'd too far from the Body of the Army, he was encompaſs'd on every ſide, wounded, and being carried away by the preſs of his Enemies, was at length taken, and lead before the Emperour. His eldeſt Brother, more experienc'd in War, rally'd and recall'd thoſe that had follow'd his Brother, and till Night maintain'd the advantages, which he had got over the Imperialiſts, who were ſtill ſupply'd with freſh Succours, as neceſſity requir'd. The next day the Fight

was

was renew'd again by break of day, and with a ſucceſs as honourable, but more bloody to the Chriſtians.

The third day the Emperour enrag'd at ſuch a reſiſtance, caus'd them to be ſet upon in ſeveral places at one time. The General of the Chriſtians Army rode from Rank to Rank, encouraging the Souldiers both by his Exhortations, and his Example: but at length having receiv'd ſeveral wounds, he was overlaid by the multitude of his Enemies that crouded to his deſtruction. And now the General being loſt, and the Chriſtians having no perſon to command them, it ceas'd to be a Combat, and became a Maſſacre. However, reſolving to dye with their Swords in their hands, they flung themſelves into the thickeſt of their Enemies, and Sacrific'd themſelves to their own Innocency. Their Camp was ſoon forc'd, and all the old Men, Women, and Children put to the Sword, except ſome few that eſcap'd and hid themſelves in the Mountains, who afterwards made a relation of this bloody Story to them who rehears'd it to me.

This was the deplorable end of the Chriſtians, and indeed of the Chriſtianiſme of *Japon*, which the Preſident procur'd by his impoſtures and fallacies. And it has been made appear by three exact accompts, that there has periſh'd, either in Battels or by Tortures, above 60000 Chriſtians. The eldeſt of their Captains ſuffer'd a moſt cruel Martyrdom for ſeven days, neither could any offer, that the Emperour could make him for his Brothers and his own Valours ſake, induce him to renounce the Chriſtian Faith. After that, there was a kind of Inquiſition ſet up thorough the whole Empire, which laſted for ſeveral years, whereby thoſe that perſever'd in the Faith, were condemn'd to moſt intolerable Torments, in ſo much that the Relation which *Van Varen*, a *Hollander*, whoſe credit it would be a vanity to queſtion in this particular, cannot be read over without Horrour. In ſixteen years, that is, from *1613* to *1629*, the Chriſtians were ſo multiply'd, that there were above 400000; but in the year *1649*, the ſame *Hollander* relates, that thoſe *Japonners* who were brought from thence by the Company's Ships to *Amſterdam*, affirm'd, that Chriſtianity was utterly extirpated out of the Iſland.

Being at *Ogli*, a large Town upon the faireſt Arm of the *Ganges*, I met a *Holland* Merchant, who had ſerv'd the Company in *Japon* a long time, and had made ſeveral Voyages. He came thither with two Ships laden with Bars of Silver and Copper, which he had exchang'd for Silks, which the *Hollanders* buy at *Bengale*. This Merchant knowing I was there, came to viſit me; and I finding him to be a ſincere honeſt Man, and well verſt in the affairs of *Japan*, eſpecially in reference to the laſt perſecution of the Chriſtians, grew covetous of his converſe, and invited him often to my Houſe. In our familiar diſcourſes concerning the ſettlement of the *Hollanders* in the *Eaſt-Indies*, and of the extraordinary gain which they make by their Trade there, and paſſing thus from one thing to another, at length I ask'd him who was the Author and Contriver of a Maſſacre ſo horrid, as that was reported to be. Whereupon he related to me all the particulars of which I have here made a recital, and many more which I have forgot or omitted, as being either not pertinent to my ſubject, or elſe already related by others. He had his information from ſuch of the Natives that had eſcap'd out of the Battel, and ſeveral of the Idolater

Merchants, in whoſe memories the fact was then freſh: and indeed he was ſo ingenious in his Story, that I could not find any motive to incite me to miſdoubt the truth of it. For many times he could not forbear ſhedding tears, and to interrupt his diſcourſe with his ſighs, often imprecating Heav'ns Vengeance upon the Preſident, and proteſting he wonder'd the Company employ'd him ſo long. But God reſerv'd his puniſhment to himſelf. For the deſerts of his crimes always attending him, and provoking judgments and misfortunes upon whatever Enterprize he took in hand, he miſerably periſh'd in ſight of *Lisbon* in fair weather. All the men in the Ship were ſav'd; only he returning to recover a certain Cabinet of Jewels which he had there, the Ship ſplit, and the *Portugals* had the ſatisfaction to ſee him ſwallow'd up in the Sea, who had been the occaſion of the Ruin of ſo many of their Country-men in *Japon*; and immediately they rang their Bells in the City for joy of his Death.

In my laſt Voyage to the *Indies* I was at *Bandar-Abaſſi*, where the *Hollanders* have a Factory. Thither arriv'd two Veſſels from *Japon* to take in Silks, which the *Hollanders* buy of the *Perſians* to exchange in *Japon*. The Captain of one of the Ships told me, that during ſeveral trading Voyages which he had made to that Iſland, the Emperour had caus'd two Inquiſitions to be made after the Chriſtians; in the firſt of which the Inquiſitors met with 247, who were all moſt exquiſitely tormented to Death; in the latter they only found 63, among whom were ſeventeen Children, twelve Girls and five Boys, of which the eldeſt were not above thirteen years of Age.

Among all the perſecutions which the Chriſtians ſuffer'd, there was none comparable to this for extremity of Torments: For the *Japonners* are the moſt ingenious in cruelty of any people in the World, and the moſt conſtant in ſuffering. For there have been Children from ten to a dozen years old, who for 60 days together have endur'd to have their Bodies faſten'd to the Croſs, half burnt, half torn in pieces, while their Executioners forc'd them to eat, on purpoſe to prolong their Lives in miſery; and yet they would not renounce the Faith which they had embrac'd. Neither did this barbarous Inquiſition extend only to the Chriſtians, but to their Kindred and Relations, nay, to their very Neighbours. For if a Prieſt were taken in any Houſe, all the people in that Houſe, and the Houſes adjoyning, were hall'd to Execution, for not having made the diſcovery.

At the beginning of every year there is a new Inquiſition, at which time all that can write are requir'd to ſubſcribe, or elſe the chief of the Family ſubſcribes for all the reſt, that they neither are Chriſtians, nor are acquainted with any Chriſtians, and that they abominate Chriſtianity as a Religion dangerous to the State.

Don John of *Braganza*, being advanc'd to the Crown, that ſudden change which in one day, and without the leaſt Tumult in *Lisbon*, wreſted the Crown of *Portugal* from the King of *Spain*, wrought the ſame effect at *Goa*. All the *Portugals* at *Goa* at the ſame time acknowledg'd their new Soveraign; the Viceroy who was a *Spaniard*, was ſent away to *Spain* by the firſt Veſſels that were homeward bound; and *Don Philip de Maſcarennas*, a *Portugal*, Governour of *Ceylan*, came to *Goa*, and took upon him the command of Viceroy.

So

So ſoon as he came to the Government, his firſt thoughts were how to Eſtabliſh the Trade of the *Portugals* in *Japon*, which when they were expell'd, amounted to three Millions of *Pardo's* yearly, one *Pardo* being worth twenty ſeven *Sous* of *French* Money. The hopes therefore of regaining ſo great a loſs, made him toward the end of the year 1642, take a reſolution to ſend a ſolemn Embaſſy to the Emperour of *Japon*, furniſh'd with magnificent Preſents: For which reaſon he made choice of what was moſt rare, and moſt likely to be acceptable to the Emperour, and the Grandees of his Court. The moſt coſtly of theſe Preſents was a piece of *Lignum Aloes*, otherwiſe call'd *Wood of Calambour*, four Foot in length, and two Foot in Diameter; a larger piece then which the *Indies* had never ſeen, having coſt 40000 *Parao's*. To this he added a great quantity of fair Coral Beads of an extraordinary bigneſs. This is the moſt acceptable Preſent that can be ſent to the Lords of *Japon*, which they faſten to the Strings wherewith they draw their Pouches together. With theſe he ſent a great number of Carpets and Hangings of Cloth of Gold, Silver, and Silk, and ſeveral pieces of Tiſſue of Gold and Silver. 'Tis ſaid the whole Preſent coſt the City of *Goa* above eight hundred thouſand *Pardo's*, which amounts to about 86666 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* of *Engliſh* Money. Beſides all this, the two great Ships which were prepar'd for the Embaſſador, carry'd one of them 50 Peeces of Canon, and the other 35, both laden with all ſorts of Commodities which are eſteem'd and priz'd in *Japon*, amounting to about 83333 *l.* 6 *s.* 8 *d.* Sterling. The Equipage of the Embaſſador was no leſs ſumptuous. And becauſe the Viceroy would not be thought to give any occaſion of offence to the Emperour, he would not ſuffer one *Jeſuit* in the Train, but only four *Auguſtins* for the Admiral, and four *Jacobins* for the other, Men of diſcretion and conduct. While I was at *Goa*, in the year 1648, I met with ſome of theſe Fathers, who gave an exact accompt of the Embaſſy.

They made a proſperous Voyage, and arriv'd happily at their intended Port. But you muſt underſtand, that when any Ship arrives at *Japon*, no perſons are permitted to come aſhore, 'till the Governour of the place have an accompt who they are, that they may give notice thereof to the Emperour, and know his pleaſure, whether they ſhall be received or no. In the mean time the Ships rode in a very dangerous place, at the entry of the Haven, into which there was no ſteering, without the aſſiſtance of the Native Pilots.

The Governour of *Nangaſaqui* ſurpriz'd to underſtand that they were *Portugueſes*, wrote in all haſt to the Emperour. The *Dutch* Preſident being inform'd of the news, play'd all the pranks he could, us'd all the contrivances imaginable to fruſtrate the ſucceſs of the Embaſſy, and to ruine the Veſſels that brought the Embaſſadour and his Preſents. To which purpoſe he found a way to bribe the Courrier, who was ſent with the Emperours Orders; ſo that inſtead of twenty days, which were ſufficient for his journey, he made it above two Months before he deliver'd his diſpatches. During which time the two Ships had ſuffer'd very bad weather upon the Coaſts, and endur'd many a ſevere Storm. At length the Orders came that none ſhould be permitted to Land but the Embaſſadour, the two Captains, and the two Pilots, to give an accompt of the ſubject and cauſe of their coming. The Embaſſadour being Landed, acquainted the Governour that he came to compliment

the

the Emperour in the behalf of the King his Maſter, and to aſſure him that they were no longer under the Power of the King of *Spain*. That about a year ſince, a lawful Heir of *Portugal* had recover'd the Diadem of his Anceſtors which the *Spaniard* had uſurp'd. That this new King was ſo juſt and generous a Prince, that underſtanding that ſome of his Subjects had deſerted the Iſland of *Japon*, without paying their Debts, he had now ſent to make a general ſatisfaction; but chiefly out of that reſpect which obliges all Soveraigns newly come to the Crown, to give notice thereof to thoſe Princes, whoſe friendſhip they deſire.

The Governour inform'd the Emperour of all theſe things; but the Preſident having as good intelligence by means of his Friends at Court, alledg'd to the Emperour that they were Rebels, who came from the utmoſt parts of the Weſt, to bring the News and Example of their Revolt to *Japon*: That the natural reſtleſneſs of this Nation caus'd frequent diſturbances and revolutions among them. That they were never long at reſt themſelves, nor would ſuffer others to be at quiet. That conſidering the experience he had had, he could not be either too cautious for the ſecurity of his perſon, or the tranquillity of his Empire. Laſtly, that the Emperour and the Empire would be ruin'd paſt recovery, if thoſe people were ever admitted to ſet footing therein.

This Counſel well ſeconded by the reſt of the Cabal, eaſily made an impreſſion in the Heart of the Prince naturally Barbarous, and an Enemy to the Chriſtians. Thereupon he ſent an Order to the Governour to invite all the *Whites* aboard, and to treat them for eight days in the beſt manner he could. At the end of eight days they were order'd to repair aboard again, and at the ſame time he made a Preſent to the Embaſſadour, and chief of his Train, conſiſting of ſix great Cabinets, and ſix Coffers lacker'd with black, with Figures in Relief, intermix'd with ſpangles of Gold, all the Embelliſhments being of Maſſie Gold. With them were ſix Cabinets, and ſix Coffers, lacker'd with Red, Embelliſh'd after the ſame manner with Silver. I ſaw ſome of them when I was at *Goa*, and I muſt confeſs I never beheld any ſo rare and beautiful in that kind, which made me admire the ingenious Induſtry of the Artiſts of *Japon*; Our *European* imitations of their workmanſhip being no way comparable to them.

The Embaſſadour having receiv'd his Preſent, had Order to remove all the Goods in the ſecond Veſſel into the Admiral. He would have made great Preſents to the Governour, who refus'd them; telling the Embaſſadour withall, that he had expreſs command to refuſe them, and to declare to the Embaſſadour, that if he did not make haſt away, he would ſink his Ship. That the Emperour his Maſter had made a new prohibition, forbidding all *Portugals* and *Spaniards* to venture near his Dominions upon any pretence whatſoever; nay, though it were upon pretence of an Embaſſy, upon pain of being crucifi'd upon the place, without liberty to ſpeak for themſelves. As for the Debts of the *Portugals*, he had undertaken to diſcharge them himſelf; only he had ſent that Preſent to the King his Maſter to thank him for that Embaſſy. The Embaſſadour had no ſooner remov'd the Goods out of the ſecond Veſſel into the Admiral, but they ſank her before his face. And not contented with that affront, the Governour ſent for all the Blacks that were in the Admiral, and cut off their Heads, pretending they were *Indians*, and that, as ſuch, they could not be ignorant of the Rigorous prohibitions

which

which the Emperour had put forth, forbidding all Strangers, except the *Hollanders*, to ſet footing in *Japon*.

After the *Portugal* Embaſſadour was thus barbarouſly fruſtrated and diſmiſs'd, he ſent News thereof to the General at *Batavia*, urging him to execute the deſign which the *Hollanders* had upon *Macao*; telling him alſo, That though there were a probability of a League between the *Hollander* and the *Portugal* againſt the *Spaniard*, yet that it could be no harm to ſeize *Macao* beforehand, as they had made themſelves Maſters of ſeveral places, while the *Portugals* were under the King of *Spain*. The General taking the Preſident's advice, was ready to ſet Sail upon this enterprize, when a Meſſenger from *Portugal* brought him the News of the Treaty concluded between *Portugal* and *Holland*; as alſo of the Navy which the *Hollanders* had ſent to *Lisbon* to aid the *Portugals*. At firſt he made as if it had been a falſe Rumour, and put the Meſſenger in Priſon; nevertheleſs while he delay'd the departure of the Fleet, he receiv'd expreſs Orders from his Superiours to Treat the *Portugals* as Friends and Allies. So that he was conſtrain'd to turn all his Forces againſt the *Molucca* Iſlands, then in the poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards*.

The Preſident was very ſorry for the laſt News, by reaſon that the General and he had great deſigns upon the Conqueſt of that place, and had promis'd the Company by that means to make them abſolute Maſters of the Trade of *China*, and of all the Eaſt. True it is, that *Macao* is very advantagiouſly ſeated for thoſe that deſign to be Maſters of thoſe Seas, eſpecially upon the Coaſts of *Quantung* and *Fockien*, which are the Provinces, whither are brought down all the Merchandizes of this Empire. It lies at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Canton*, in a ſmall *Peninſula* adjoyning to a larger Iſland, and built upon a kind of a Promontory, on three ſides environ'd with the Sea, which no Ship can come neer by reaſon of the Flats, unleſs it be on that ſide next the Port, which is defended by a ſtrong Fortreſs. This City drew from the only Fair of *Quanchiu* 1300 Cheſts of Silks of all ſorts, every Cheſt containing 150 pieces, and 2500 Lingots of Gold, not reckoning the raw Silks, the Gold Wire, and other Merchandizes: whence it may be eaſily judg'd what advantage the *Portugueſes* made of it; and wherefore the Preſident deſir'd ſo much to expell them from thence.

But his Deſigns were diſappointed, not only by the revolution in *Portugal*, but alſo by the loſs which the *Hollanders* ſuſtain'd of the Iſland of *Formoſa*, which the *Chineſes* took from them, following the advice of a *French* Souldier, whom the Governour of *Tayovan* had refus'd to diſmiſs after his time was out. For the better underſtanding this accident, you muſt know that the *Hollanders* being ſetl'd in *Japon*, and having excluded all other Nations from thence, except the *Chineſes*, whom the Emperour permitted to return, after that the Maſſacre committed by the *Japonners* in a City of *China*, of which they had a deſire to make themſelves Maſters, had caus'd a Ceſſation of the Commerce between the two Kingdoms, and conſtrain'd the Emperour of *China* to ſet a price upon the Heads of the *Japonners*. Nevertheleſs the *Hollanders* did all they could to make a new Rupture between the people, or elſe themſelves to ſeize upon ſome place that lay proper to ruin the Trade of the *Chineſes* to *Japon*.

To this purpoſe, not daring to attempt upon the *Portugueſes*, they over-ran the Seas which environ'd the neighbouring Iſlands, and took the

the Veſſels of the *Chineſes* which were bound for *Macao*, exerciſing ſtrange Cruelties upon the people that had eſcap'd into thoſe Iſlands, after the irruption of the *Tartars* into *China*. *Coxinga*, the Son of *Chinchilunge*, that famous Pirate, who ſav'd the remainders of that ruin'd Empire, then commanded thoſe people, and was become formidable to the *Tartars* themſelves. Who to revenge himſelf upon the *Dutch* Pirates, undertook the Siege of *Tayovan*, where they uſually retir'd, and by gaining that place drave them wholly out of *Formoſa*.

This is a large Iſland plac'd at the poynt of the *Phillippines*, ſtretching out in length from North to South, and to the Weſt lying oppoſite to the Provinces of *Fockien*, and *Quantung*. The *Chineſes* call it *Talieukieu*. Since which time, 'tis very probable that the *Spaniards* gave it the name of *Formoſa*, from its beauty and fertility. They being the firſt people of *Europe* that diſcover'd it, and inhabited it; and upon one of its Promontories to the North built the Fort of *Kiling*. The natural Inhabitants live almoſt all in the Woods and Mountains, where they maintain themſelves by hunting the Hart, and wild Boar, whoſe dry'd Fleſh, Skins, and Horns they ſell to the *Sangleys*, who in exchange bring them other neceſſaries. The little Iſland of *Tayovan* lent its Name to the little Fort which the *Engliſh* built, over againſt the great Iſland; it was very convenient for the *Hollanders*, who made great advantage of the Cattel, Hides, and Horns, both of Harts and Bufalo's, which they carry'd from thence, and ſold to the *Chineſes* and *Japonners*, who make great uſe thereof in ſeveral of their Trades and Manufactures. But the chiefeſt advantage which the *Hollanders* made of this Iſland conſiſted in this, that it lay in the middle way between *Batavia* and *Japon*, and ſerv'd as a place of ſecurity for their Ships in bad Seaſons, and to take in refreſhments. There alſo they laded off ſeveral of the Goods of the *Chineſes*, which they took by way of Piracy from the *Chineſes*, or which were brought them by the *Sangleys*, who are the Original Merchants of the *Chineſes*, ſetled at the *Philippines*, but who drive the greateſt Trade of that Country, independent from the *Spaniards*.

Coxinga, though an Idolater and a Pirate, baniſh'd out of his Country, and provok'd by the *Hollanders*, had ſo much humanity as to ſend to the General at *Batavia* to ſend away Veſſels to fetch away his Men, and deliver'd them all without ſuffering them to receive the leaſt injury. He had his Friends and Favourers in the Emperour of *Japon*'s Court, as being a declar'd Enemy to the *Tartars*, whoſe neer Neighbourhood the *Japonners* cannot endure. For ſo quick a Conqueſt of ſo many Lands and Provinces in ſeven years, as it were only upon ſight of the Enemy, had very much alarum'd them. He by his Friends acquainted the Emperour of the acts of Hoſtility, committed by the *Hollanders* againſt the *Chineſe* Merchants: Adding moreover, that they had made private propoſitions to league themſelves with the common Enemy; and that it was one of the Nations of the North, born for the deſolation of other Countries, and to invade the Peace of Empires. That they had ſetled themſelves in the Iſlands of the Eaſt only by treachery and violence. That for ſome years ſince, they had made it their buſineſs to cruiſe the Seas between *China* and *Japon*, on purpoſe to make themſelves abſolute Maſters of the Trade, and that if he did not take a ſpeedy courſe, they would do the ſame miſchief in his Dominions which the *Tartars* had done in *China*.

The

The Preſident had much ado to divert the Storm, for the moſt potent Lords at Court, although his Penſioners and Friends, began to open their Eyes, and in ſome meaſure took *Coxinga*'s part, ſaying, That the *Chineſes* were unfortunate enough, in being laid waſt by the *Tartars*, without being perſecuted and afflicted by the *Hollanders*. That ſeeing that after they had been expell'd their Country, they had nothing left but their Boats, and ſome few Rocks for their places of refuge, it was a piece of inhumanity to diſturb them in their laſt Sanctuaries, and to deprive them of their liberty of the Sea, and their Commerce with *Japon*, from whence thoſe miſerable Exiles had their chiefeſt ſupport. The *Bonzes*, the Merchants, the vulgar People, all took the *Chineſes* part. Thereupon the Emperour ſent for the *Dutch* Preſident, and told him, I underſtand, ſaid he, that thy Company abuſes my Protection, and that their Veſſels, inſtead of being contented with the Trade which I have permitted them, preſume to play the Pyrates upon the *Chineſes*, and to trouble the Seas adjoyning to my Empire. If I hear any more of theſe complaints, I will cauſe thee and all thy Nation to be Crucifi'd. I know not how the Preſident appeas'd the Emperour's fury; this I know in general, that the *Hollanders* made a ſecret alliance with the *Tartars* againſt *Coxinga*. Him the Inhabitants of *Fockien* call'd to their aſſiſtance, having rais'd an Army of 200000 Men; whereupon he went to aid them with a very powerful Navy. After ſeveral Skirmiſhes, the *Tartars* and *Chineſes* came to a pitch'd Field, where the Captain of the *Tartars* having plac'd the beſt part of his Cavalry in Ambuſh, order'd his Men to retreat by degrees, till they had drawn the *Chineſes* into the Ambuſcade; at what time the *Tartars* encompaſſing them on every ſide, kill'd 80000 upon the place; *Coxinga* with his Navy not being able to relieve them.

During this War, the *Hollanders* took their opportunity, and made themſelves Maſters of the Iſland of *Fiſhers*, between *Formoſa* and the Coaſt of *Fockien*. In a ſhort while after *Coxinga* dy'd, and *Savia* his Uncle, the richeſt Merchant of *China*, who out of his own revenue had disburs'd the expences of the laſt War, grew weary of the charge, and was deſirous to make Peace with the *Tartars*. Of which one of the Sons of *Coxinga* being advertiz'd, ſeiz'd upon his Uncles perſon, and ſhut him up in a cloſe Priſon, where he kill'd himſelf for madneſs. The *Hollanders* overjoy'd at the Death of *Savia*, who had always hinder'd them from the Trade of the Province of *Fockien*, ſent a Navy againſt his Nephew in favour of the *Tartars*, who made War againſt him all along the Sea-Coaſt. Several Combats happen'd between the *Juncks* of the *Iſlanders* and the *Holland* Veſſels in view of the *Tartars*, who ſatisfi'd themſelves with being only Spectators. But all the benefit which the *Hollanders* reap'd from the advantages which they obtain'd over the *Iſlanders*, was only to put into the Hands of the *Tartars* the Cities of *Bemos* and *Queſmoy*, and all the places thereabouts, which *Coxinga*'s Party poſſeſs'd before. For notwithſtanding all their kindneſs, the *Tartars* would not aſſiſt them to retake *Tayovan*; ſo that they only were content to build certain ſmall Forts in the ſmall Iſlands adjoyning to *Formoſa*: and ſince my return from the *Indies*, I never could inform my ſelf of the truth of the iſſue of that Enterprize.

But the *Hollanders* were not content with their ſettlement at *Firmando*, which was an Iſland both deſert and barren, ſeated upon a Streight,

which ſeparates the Point of the Land of *Corea* from *Japon*, a place no way commodious for their Deſigns of Engroſſing the Trade of *China*, as being too remote from *Nangiſaqui*: Beſides, that the North and South Winds are ſo violent at their Seaſons in this Streight, between the two Coaſts, that it is impoſſible to come near the ſhoar when they blow. The Preſident therefore having ſuch good luck in the Expulſion of the *Portugals* out of *Japon*, doubted not but that he might obtain the ſmall Iſland of *Kiſma*, an Iſland that had been wholly deſerted ever ſince the Habitations of the people had been deſtroy'd. At firſt he only deſir'd leave to build a ſmall Tenement for the conveniency of the Factors. Now between this Iſland and *Nangiſaqui*, there is only a narrow Frith, not above a Musquet Shot over. Here the Preſident deſir'd the Governour that he might make a Bridge of Boats for a more eaſie intercourſe between the City and the Port. The Governour gain'd by Preſents, gave him leave to build the Bridge; but ſeeing that the *Hollanders* made an ill uſe of it, and that they came too frequently and numerouſly into the City, he built two Forts at both ends of the Bridge, and furniſh'd them with Souldiers, who were to take notice who paſs'd to and fro. He alſo publiſh'd an Order, That ſuch *Hollanders* as came by day into the Town, ſhould return to their Lodgings before night, upon pain of Death. This Order, and the little conveniency which they had for Lodging in their own Quarters, very much troubl'd them; ſo that the Preſident made new Applications at Court, and obtain'd leave to build a Factory, and Warehouſes for their Goods.

The Governour thereupon ſent a Surveyor to the *Hollanders*, to mark out the Ground which the Emperour had given them to build upon. This perſon being largely rewarded, made them good meaſure, and yet they were not contented; ſo that in the Night-time they had enlarg'd their Quarters, by removing the firſt marks. The Governour, being advertiz'd thereof, began to be very angry; but they found means to appeaſe him with their Preſents: ſo that he eaſily condeſcended to the ſlight reaſons which they gave him for what they had done. Thus in a ſhort time they finiſh'd their work, which was without encompaſs'd with a Wall, much like a Garden Wall, but within contain'd a real Fort, flanck'd and lin'd according to all the Rules of Art; and which, the outward Wall being beaten down, not only defended their Bridge, but commanded the entry into the Haven of *Nangiſaqui*.

They took great care not to admit any but *Hollanders*, for fear their Deſign ſhould be diſcover'd. So that when the whole was finiſh'd, the Preſident gave advice to the General at *Batavia* what he had done, deſiring him to ſend him eight Braſs Guns, ſo broken, as to be eaſily put together in the places where they were broken. He adviz'd him alſo to put them up in Hogſheads, pack'd up like other Goods; and inſtead of Mariners, to ſend a good number of Souldiers, habited like Mariners, for the ſecurity of the Factory. But this Stratagem had not that ſucceſs which he expected; for about that time the Emperour had ſent a new Governour to *Nangiſaqui*: So that when the Ships arriv'd at *Batavia*, the new chang'd Officers, being more vigilant then the former, coming to weigh the Bales as they were put aſhore, and finding certain Hogſheads at the bottom of the hold, which they could not remove by reaſon of their weight, they preſently brake them up, and perceiving there the broken pieces of Canons, carry'd ſome of them

to

to the Governour, who immediately ſent intelligence thereof to *Yeddo*, of which the Preſident had as ſuddain notice by his Penſioners. He having his invention at command, repairs forthwith to the Emperour's Court, and there tells the Emperour, That he had receiv'd Orders from his Superiours to preſent him with certain Peeces of Canon, made according to the neweſt Invention of his Country, the uſe whereof was ſo convenient, that they were with little difficulty and trouble to be drawn up, and made uſe of, where others could not poſſibly be brought to play: and that he thought no Preſent could be more acceptable or ſerviceable to him, to render him Victorious over his Enemies. Upon this the Emperour was very well ſatisfi'd, and ſent to the Governour of *Nangiſaqui* to ſend him thoſe Guns, and withall, not to moleſt the *Hollanders*, either in their Factory, or in vending their Wares.

Having ſo fortunately diſengag'd himſelf out of theſe Briers, he lays another deſign, and ſends to the General at *Batavia*, a perſon of a turbulent and unquiet Spirit like himſelf, to ſet out two Veſſels, to make a diſcovery of all the Coaſts of *Japon*, and particularly of thoſe Coaſts which were next the Gold Mines, and to ſee if they could find any ſafe Harbour for Ships to ride in, in thoſe tempeſtuous Seas, or any places proper to fortifie, that they might no longer depend upon the uncertain humour of the Court of *Japon*, which was as inconſtant as their Seas. The General provided two Ships, and furniſh'd them with excellent Pilots, good Souldiers, expert Mariners, and Proviſions for two years, with all other Neceſſaries and Inſtruments, as well for delving as building. One of the ſeven of the General's Council was chos'n Superviſor of the Enterprize. 'Tis ſaid, that thoſe two Veſſels skirted all along the Coaſt of *Japon*, from the Eaſt to the South, and from the South to the North, fetching a compaſs about the Iſlands to the 47 *deg.* of Northern Latitude, and that they diſcover'd one Iſland which they call'd *The States Iſland*, and afterwards touch'd upon another Land which they nam'd *The Company's Land*, inhabited by White people, with long Hair, habited after the *Japon* faſhion, which they found to be a Continent adjoyning to *Niulhan*, and *Corea*; and that after they had wander'd a long time upon the Sea, without any other deſign then to make new Diſcoveries, they paſs'd through the Streights of *Sanguar*, which ſeparates the Land of *Yeſſo* from *Japon*, and kept along thoſe Coaſts of *Japon* to the Eaſt, to obſerve the Bays of *Aizu*, and *Xendai*, where are the Gold Mines. In that part a furious Tempeſt took them, in ſight of the Mountains, where the Gold Mines lye, which laſted four days together. The ſecond of theſe Veſſels run full againſt a Rock, and ſplit her ſelf, with the total loſs of every Mothers Son in the Veſſel. The Admiral held out a longer time, but coaſting the Land where the Mountains of *Sataque* appear, the Tempeſt grew ſo violent, that ſhe alſo brake againſt the Rocks. In this ſecond Shipwrack only the Admiral, and thirteen perſons more eſcap'd, partly by the help of the Planks, and partly by Swiming. The *Japonners* upon the Coaſt preſently ran to view them, and wonder'd to ſee people in thoſe parts, whoſe Language they did not underſtand. Nevertheleſs, they entertain'd them civiliy enough; but in regard they were Strangers, and that there was a ſtrict prohibition not to receive any Strangers among them upon any pretence whatſoever, they were at a great loſs what to do with 'em. One, wiſer then the reſt, adviſ'd his

Brethren to carry them to the Emperour, whoſe counſel was follow'd; and ſo they took their journey toward *Yeddo*, which was above a hundred Leagues off.

The Emperour, being inform'd of their arrival, order'd that they ſhould be civilly us'd; and at the end of eight days ſent for them, and caus'd them to be ask'd, of what Country they were, and what Deſign brought them into his Seas? The Admiral, who was a perſon of a ready ingenuity, anſwer'd, That he was a *Hollander*, who all his life time had ſerv'd his Country as a Souldier, where he had the command of a thouſand Horſe, and two thouſand Foot, at what time Fortune, or rather the care of preſerving his Honour, forc'd him from his Native Soyl. I was, ſaid he, one of the chief Commanders in the Army, and though I ſay it, my Service had gain'd me a fair reputation. The Prince, who commanded us, had a great confidence in me, which made one of his near Relations jealous of me; ſo that he was not only content to do me all ill Offices with the General, but ſought all occaſions to pick a quarrel with me. I dare be bold to ſay, that had he not been ſo nearly related to the Prince, I ſhould not have taken his affronts ſo long patiently. But at length he provok'd that patience to ſuch a degree, and ſo deeply and openly affronted me, that I was conſtrain'd to meet him with my Sword in my hand. His misfortune and mine ſo order'd it, that I kill'd him at the firſt puſh. My Friends aſſiſted me to make my eſcape, and kept me hid for ſome days, thinking to have appeas'd the Princes anger; but it continu'd ſo violent, that they advis'd me to abſent my ſelf for ſome years. Therefore to render my Exile leſs tedious, and that I might be ſtill doing ſomething for the Service of my Country, I deſir'd my Friends to furniſh me with two Ships, with a reſolution to ſeek out and deſtroy all thoſe Pirates that infeſted the *Indian* Seas. I have been in chace of them for a whole year together; and ſometimes we met with Tempeſts ſo violent, that drave us we know not whither our ſelves, my Pilots not being experienc'd in the Eaſtern Seas. Soon after meeting with another Tempeſt no leſs rude and boyſtrous, we were forc'd to let our Ships drive as the Winds themſelves were pleas'd to force them, which at length drove us upon the Coaſts of this Empire, where we have ſuffer'd Shipwrack, not having ſav'd above fourteen of four hundred, which I brought along with me. Happy in ſuch a misfortune, to be caſt upon the Territories of a Prince ſo potent and generous, that, no queſtion, will have compaſſion upon our miſeries.

When the Interpreter had repeated this Relation to the Emperour, the Prince, and all the Lords of the Court were very much concern'd, and admir'd both the Courage and Aſpect of the Stranger. The Emperour ſent him very rich Preſents, and to all thoſe of his Company; and gave Order, that he ſhould be conducted to *Kiſma*, to the *Holland* Factory, and that he ſhould be well treated upon the way, during the whole journey, which was five and twenty or thirty days Travel. There this famous Champion ſtay'd four Months, in expectation of the Ships that come every year from *Batavia* to *Japon*; ſo that he had time enough to make a full Relation of the Lands which he had obſerv'd, and of all the particulars of the Shipwrack. One day as he was telling how he had cajoll'd the Emperour, and that the Preſident was applauding the quickneſs of his wit for inventing ſuch an imaginary piece of Knight-Errantry,

Errantry, a *Japoneſe* Boy that ſerv'd the Preſident, heard all the diſcourſe, without being obſerv'd by his Maſter. Some Months after, the Preſident had beaten this Boy, which he, as all the *Japoneſes* are of a fiery and vindicative Nature, reſolving to revenge, went to the Governour of *Nangiſaqui*, and repeated to him the whole Diſcourſe between his Maſter and the Admiral. The Governour, finding it to be a buſineſs of importance, ſends advice thereof to the Court. The Emperour was ſo enrag'd at the injury and affront put upon him, that he commanded the Governour to ſtop the Admiral and his Train, and to ſend him with a good Guard to *Yeddo*, and not to let any Ship enter the Harbour, 'till he had had a full Examination of the matter.

This Order was not ſo ſecret, but that the Preſidents Friends had notice thereof, who preſently gave him intelligence of it ſo ſeaſonably, that the Admiral was ſent away before the Order came to the Governour. Eight days after, three *Holland* Veſſels arriv'd at *Kiſma*, to whom the Governour ſent expreſs command to keep out at Sea, and not to come aſhore. The Preſident feigning to be ſurpriz'd at this Prohibition, went to the Governour to know the reaſon, who gave him this Anſwer, The Emperour, ſaid he, is acquainted with your tricks, you ſhall have no more kindneſs from me; I have ſent to Court to give notice of the arrival of your three Ships, and I ſhall follow my Orders when they come. Upon this the Preſident made no doubt but the Admiral's ſtory was diſcover'd; and recollecting with himſelf that he had beaten his *Japoneſe* Boy, and that he was run away from him, he ſoon conjectur'd at the Author of all the miſchief. In ſhort, the Governour receives his Orders, the Tenour whereof was, That he ſhould ſend away the three Veſſels, without permitting them to land either Men or Goods; and that he ſhould tell the Preſident, That the Emperour was ſatisfi'd that the Admiral was a Cheat and a Spy, whom he intended to puniſh ſeverely; and therefore, if he did not ſend for him to *Japon* by the firſt opportunity of the Winds, he would put to Death all thoſe of his Nation, and fling their Goods into the Sea.

Upon the return of three Ships to *Batavia*, there was no ſmall hurly burly in the Iſland; for by them they underſtood the danger that their Country-men were in, if they did not ſend back the Admiral. Thereupon an extraordinary Council was call'd, to deliberate upon an affair of ſo great importance, who were all of one mind, that the Admiral was to be ſent back, and that it was better for one to ſuffer, then a whole Nation.

The Admiral being advertiz'd of this their reſolution, publickly proteſted againſt the violence and injuſtice they were about to do him; telling them, that he was born a Subject of the Republick of *Holland*, who had only the Power of his life and death; that in their Service, he would expoſe his life to a thouſand hazards, but that he was not oblig'd to ſacrifice himſelf for the particular Intereſts of a private Trade. The Miniſters took his part, and made it a caſe in Religion. The common people mutiny'd againſt the General, and the Tumult grew to that heat, that the Sea-men were ſent for from aboard their Ships to diſperſe the multitude. At length, by the interpoſition of a Miniſter, the buſineſs was brought to a concluſion; who perſwaded the Admiral by his ſmooth Language, to appeaſe the diſorder of the people, by ſubmitting to the Reſult of the Council. Thereupon he promis'd

promis'd to return to *Japon*, provided they would allow him what he demanded, not only for his reward, but alſo that which ſhould bear him out in that ſame new part which he had in his head to act.

Firſt he demanded two Ships magnificently trim'd, a Train of fifty choſen Men, every one of which was to have three changes of Habit, of the richeſt Stuffs that could be had: Moreover 50000 Crowns for his Voyage, a Cupboard of Gold and Silver Plate, with all Equipage proportionable, and that thoſe that accompany'd him ſhould reſpect him, as a perſon of great Quality.

All this was allow'd him, and the Admiral departed from *Batavia*, and arriv'd well at *Nangiſaqui*. The Governour ſurpriz'd at the beauty of the Veſſels, could not believe them to be Merchants, and therefore ſent to know who they were; but he was more ſurpriz'd when he knew that it was the Admiral. Forthwith he diſpatch'd a Courrier to the Emperour, to give him notice, and to inform him with what magnificence the Admiral was return'd. The Preſident alſo ſent, that he might have a favourable reception, and to deſire his Friends to let the Emperour know, that this was a Perſon of great Quality, whom an Honourable Action had driven from his Country, and that he no ſooner underſtood the accuſation that lay againſt him, but that he was return'd with that Equipage that became him, to juſtifie himſelf.

'Till the Order came, the Governour, according to cuſtom, caus'd all the Sails and Rudders of the Ships to be brought to him, not permitting any perſon to come aſhore. At length the Order came, that the Admiral and his Attendants ſhould be receiv'd into the City, together with all things neceſſary for their perſons, and that they ſhould be convoy'd to *Yeddo*, and that in all places where they came, they ſhould be nobly treated. The Preſident accompany'd the Admiral to aſſiſt him, as well with his Coun ils, as with the favour of his Friends. Their Entry was very magnificent, and the richneſs of their Habits brought the people from all parts, as being mainly greedy after Novelty, ſo that the noiſe thereof was ſpread all over the Court: Yet the Emperour would not admit them to their Audience upon the day which they deſir'd.

Two Months were elaps'd, during which time the Admiral kept open Table, and diſplay'd his daſling Riches to the Eyes of the *Japoneſes*, and being of a quick and apprehenſive wit, he caus'd himſelf to be inſtructed in the Language of the Iſland, and in a ſhort time he began to underſtand many Words. When the Emperour ſent for him, he clad himſelf and his Train in a richer Habit then that which they had on when he made his Entry. At firſt the Emperour ſeem'd to be angry; I underſtand, ſaid he, that thou art an Impoſtor and a Traytor, that thy Birth is obſcure, and that thou art come as a ſpy into my Kingdom, and therefore I am reſolv'd to puniſh thee according to thy merits.

When the Interpreter had explain'd the Emperour's words, the Admiral with an undaunted countenance, Sir, ſaid he, a Prince ſo great as you are, ſhould rather be a comfort and ſupport to the unfortunate, then add to their affliction. Fortune, that perſecutes me, has in nothing been more cruel to me, then in raiſing thoſe Calumnies, with which ſhe has endeavour'd to blemiſh my reputation with your Majeſty. She might expell me my Country, and caſt me upon unknown Coaſts at the other end of the World; but ſhe can never inſpire into

me

me thoughts unworthy of my Birth. This is the ſecond time I have been within your Dominions, the firſt by occaſion of Shipwrack, the ſecond to obey your Majeſties commands. The firſt accuſes none but the Winds. And had I been guilty of what I am accus'd, I ſhould never have ventur'd my ſelf into your hands ſo far off from your Power. But, Sir, my Accuſers have one advantage which I have not; they ſpeak your Language, I underſtand it not, nor how to make you apprehend the truth of my juſtification. Allow me eight Months to learn the Speech of your Country, and then, if you will be ſo gratious as to hear me, I make no doubt but to confound my Accuſers, and to ſatisfie your Majeſty in all things.

The Emperour was ſurpriz'd, and mov'd with his Anſwer, but more eſpecially at his requeſt of eight Months to learn the *Japonick* Language. I grant it thee, ſaid the Emperour, for it is but juſt that a perſon accus'd ſhould have both the Liberty and means to do it. And in the mean time I will take care that thou be honourably entertain'd in all places where thou haſt a deſire to reſide.

The Admiral us'd this Liberty with ſo much prudence, and got ſo much the love of the Courtiers by his carriage and his liberality, that by their converſe, he not only learnt the Language, but by vertue of their good Character, the Emperour would often ſend for him, and ask him ſeveral Queſtions concerning our *Europe*, in reference to the Qualities of the Countries, the Manners of the People, the ſeveral Forms of Government, the Extent of the ſeveral Kingdoms, their Riches, Strength, and War-like Diſcipline; of all which, the Admiral gave him ſo handſome an Accompt, that the Prince took great delight in his Diſcourſe. And at length he had gain'd ſo much the favour and confidence of the Emperour, that he utterly laid aſide all the ill thoughts which he had of him, and condemn'd to Death, as a falſe Witneſs, and a Traducer, the *Japoneſe* that had accus'd him.

After ſo fortunate an eſcape, the Admiral thought it but common prudence to make a fair retreat in the Grandeur of his Reputation, and thereupon he took leave of the Emperour, who loaded him with Honours and Preſents. The Courtiers were alſo ſorry for his departure, ſo that ſome of them accompany'd him back, and took order for his entertainment, which was very magnificent all the way to *Nangiſaqui*, where he took Shipping a few days after, and return'd to *Batavia*.

All the People throng'd to the Port to ſee him when he Landed. He told them in few words the ſucceſs of his Voyage. Some applauded his ingenuity and courage; others extoll'd the Service which he had done the Company and Nation. The Council receiv'd him alſo with thanks and praiſes, and gave him all the Gold and Plate which he had brought back. A while after he departed for *Amſterdam*, where he was no ſooner arriv'd, but he preſented a Petition to the States General againſt the *Eaſt-India* Company, for ſending him back to *Japon*, and for reparation of the violence and injury done him. The buſineſs was long in debate, but at laſt the Company was condemn'd to pay him great damages, and Intereſt for the ſame.

But to return to the Preſident: He began now to be weary of being confin'd to one Factory, though he made up his Pack well enough where he was. But his Ambition carry'd him farther, and he thought he had done Service enough to be advanc'd to a higher Dignity. Neither

ther was his preſence ſo neceſſary at *Japon*, where he had ſettl'd the *Dutch* Trade in as good a condition as it could well be. And in truth, the *Hollanders* had then almoſt the whole Trade of the *Eaſt-Indies*. They had taken from the *Engliſh*, *Formoſa*, *Amboyna*, and *Pooleron*, and by that means engroſs'd all the Trade of Cloves, Mace, and Nutmegs. They had taken *Baton* by ſurprize. The Inhabitants of the *Celebes*, *Ternate*, and *Tidor*, were become their Vaſſals; and the King of *Macaſſar* having made an Alliance with them, had expell'd the *Portugueſes* out of his Dominions. By means of their Factories in *Sumatra*, they had got all the Pepper Trade of the Weſtern Coaſt of that Iſland into their hands, beſides ſeveral other advantages which they had in ſeveral other places, where they had encroach'd upon the *Portugals*, *Spaniards*, and the *Engliſh* themſelves. The *Eaſt-India* Company at that time entertain'd 140 Ships, part Men of War, and part Merchant-men, provided with great Guns, Ammunition, and Proviſion of all ſorts, and in theſe Ships above 6000 Men, part Souldiers, part Mariners. *Batavia* was the Soul of their Conqueſts, made upon the Ruins of the *Portugueſes*, which had they lain all together, would have made a large Empire, and by which they might have grown infinitely rich, had not the expences of their Navies and Souldiers eaten out the gains of their vaſt Trade. One of their wiſeſt Generals told me frequently, *we have*, ſaid he, *but too many Fortreſſes, we need no more then the* Cape of Good Hope, *and* Batavia, *Factories well ſettl'd, good Ships, and honeſt Men to ſerve us.* For in ſhort, their Officers pillage unmercifully, and cauſe the Commerce and Dominion of their Country-men to be deteſted by the *Indians*, through their *Covetouſneſs* and *Cruelty*.

I know my ſelf, that in the year 1664, the Expences of the *Hollanders* in the *Eaſt-Indies* amounted, *communibus annis*, to twelve Millions a year, not to reckon Shipwracks, decay of Ships, and waſt of Goods, and yet their Cargo's for *Aſia* and *Europe* have not amounted to above ten Millions; and ſometimes the Cargo's are ſo mean, that the Receits do not anſwer the Expences. Nevertheleſs their perſeverance and courage were worthy of admiration. For what could be more to be admir'd, then to ſee that a ſmall number of Merchants, aſſembled at firſt upon the ſingle ſcore of Trade, ſhould afterwards preſume to make War in Regions ſo far diſtant, aſſail ſo many Princes and Nations, plant ſo many Colonies, beſiege ſo many Cities and Forts, and laſtly, ſet forth ſo many Navies at ſuch prodigious Expences, that it would put many potent Soveraigns to a plunge to do as they did?

This was the Eſtate of the *Holland Eaſt-India* Company, at what time the Preſident, the principal Subject of this Relation, was recall'd from *Japon* to *Batavia*, there to take upon him the Office of *Chief Director*. He carry'd thither great ſtore of Wealth, and built ſeveral magnificent Houſes in the City. His Authority alſo was very large; but he exercis'd it according to his uſual cuſtom, and was hated by all the Officers of the Company, and the Citizens themſelves. He thought himſelf ſecure of the Employment of General, but he was deceiv'd in his hopes; upon which he took pet, and return'd for *Amſterdam*, where he liv'd quietly for ſome years. At length his turbulent and ambitious Spirit put him upon new Deſigns, to revenge the injury which he thought he had receiv'd. To which purpoſe he return'd to the *Indies*. His undertaking was not ſo proſperous for thoſe that employ'd him, and who merited to

have

have been better ſerv'd. He pillag'd, couzen'd, and caus'd ſeveral diſorders in their affairs, and at length returning home again, periſh'd in the River of *Lisbon* with his Money and Jewels, as hath been already related.

The End of the Firſt Part.

A RELATION OF

What paſs'd in the Negotiation *of the* DEPUTIES

Which were ſent to

PERSIA and the INDIES,

As well on the behalf of the KING, as of the FRENCH COMPANY, *for the ſettling of* Trade.

IN the Relation which I have undertaken, I ſhall make a faithful Report of things in ſuch manner as I ſaw them tranſacted by the Deputies ſent to *Perſia*, and the *Indies*, as well on the behalf of the King, as of the *French* Company, for the ſettlement of Trade.

The Thirteenth of *July*, 1665. the Sieur *Lalin*, Gentleman in Extraordinary to the King, and the Sieur *de la Boulaye*, a Centleman of *Anjou*, with the Sieurs *Beber*, *Mariage*, and *du Pont*, Deputies of the new *French* Company, for the ſettling of Trade in *Perſia* and the *Indies*, arriv'd at *Iſpahan*, and took up their Lodgings at *Zulpha*, being the Suburbs of the ſame City, where alſo at that time liv'd the Sieur *L'Eſtoile*, a *French* Merchant. *Lalin* and *Boulaye*, without ſaying any thing to the Deputies, deliver'd to *L' Eſtoile* the Letters which Monſieur *de Lyonne* had written to him; the Inſcription whereof was thus. *To Mr.* L' Eſtoile, *firſt* Valet du Chambre *to the King of* Perſia, *or in his abſence*, *to Mr.* Logis, *his Son in Law.* Which was not a little to be admir'd at by the *Franks*, who had ſojourn'd any time in that Country, to find that Monſier *Boulaye*, who had been before in *Perſia*, and ſhould have better underſtood the Cuſtom of the Court, ſhould be no better able to inſtruct a Secretary of State, then to let him give *L' Eſtoile* the Title of *Valet du Chambre* to the King of *Perſia*, who

who has none to ſerve him in his Chamber but Eunuchs, and never ſuffers a *Chriſtian* to touch his Habits, for fear of being defil'd.

The purport of the Letters, was to admoniſh *L'Eſtoile* to ſupport, aſſiſt, and protect the Deputies in the Buſineſs upon which the Company had ſent them; and in caſe of loſſes by the way, to furniſh them with ſuch neceſſaries as they ſhould want.

The King of *Perſia* was then three days journey from *Iſpahan*; for which reaſon a Meſſenger was diſpatch'd with a Letter to the *Nazar*, or Grand Maſter of the Houſe, and another to the *Mirzateker*, or his Lieutenant, to know whether his Majeſty would command them to wait on him there, or whether they ſhould expect his return to *Iſpahan*.

In the mean while the Deputies could not agree amongſt themſelves: For the three Merchants *Beber*, *Mariage*, and *du Pont* affirm'd, that the two Gentlemen were only intereſted by the by in this Negotiation; and that having no right to take cognizance of the Affairs of the Company, they ought not to trouble themſelves any farther, then the King's Letters directed them, in the affairs of the Company. That the Effect of the King's Letters was no more, then that two Gentlemen, deſirous to ſee the Court of *Perſia*, were joyn'd with the Deputies of the Company; and therefore it belong'd to them only to treat with the Miniſters of the King of *Perſia*. That the Gentlemen had no more to do then to deliver the King of *France*'s Letter to the *Perſian* King, and to deſire a nomination of Commiſſioners to treat with the Deputies. This conteſt, which all the *Franks* in vain endeavour'd to compoſe, came at length to the *Nazar*'s Ears; who was ſtrangely ſurpriz'd at it, having then a deſign to procure an Order from the King to remove out of *Iſpahan* and the Suburbs, all the *Chriſtians* of what opinion ſoever, and place them over againſt *Zulpha*.

However, the Deputies rais'd new objections and difficulties every day; which Father *Raphael* of *Mans*, Superiour of the Order of *Capuchins* in *Perſia*, employ'd all his credit and induſtry to accommodate. He wrote them out ſeveral forms of a Letter, which they were to ſend to the *Nazar*; but thoſe that pleas'd the one Party, did not like the other. At length Father *Raphael*, weary of ſcribling and altering, amending and correcting, and all to no purpoſe; told them ſeriouſly, they did ill to act in ſuch a manner, and to inſiſt upon idle formalities; that the *Perſian* Style, wherein they ought to write to the *Nazar*, ought to be conciſe and plain, without ſuperfluities, or impertinencies; and laſtly, that all their contentions did but redound to the diſadvantage of the Company, whoſe Intereſts they pretended to manage. After ſeveral conteſts, Father *Raphael*, at laſt, finiſh'd the Letter to the content of both Parties, which was tranſcrib'd into the *Perſian* Language; with another to the *Mirzateker*, and both were diſpatch'd away. The *Nazar* having read it, preſently inform'd the King of the *French* Companies deſign, and of the arrival of the Deputies. His Majeſty commanded him to let them know that they were welcome, and that in a ſhort time, he would return to *Iſpahan*, and give them Audience.

Some few dayes after, the Court return'd to *Iſpahan*, and while the King ſtopp'd at one of his Houſes near the Gates of the City, the *Nazar* ſent for Father *Raphael*, to know of him who the *French* Deputies were, and who had ſent them into *Perſia*, to which the Father gave him the beſt ſatisfaction he could. For the *Nazar* wonder'd that they were

come into the Kingdom, and ſent, as they ſaid, from ſuch a potent Prince, and yet that the Governours of *Erivan* and *Tauris* ſhould know nothing of their paſſage through thoſe Cities. The *Athemadoulet* alſo was in the ſame Aſtoniſhment; and it gave them reaſon to ſuſpect both the Quality of their Perſons, and the Reality of their Commiſſion. For either they were ignorant of the cuſtom of the Country, or elſe they did ill to travel *incognito*, like ordinary Tradeſmen, and Perſons of mean condition. But Father *Raphael* having aſſur'd them, that they were ſent by the King of *France* to ſettle a Company of Trade, and that he had Letters of Advice thereof out of *Europe*, the *Nazar* bid Father *Raphael* tell the Deputies they ſhould be in a readineſs, for that the King would give them Audience in a few days.

But the former miſunderſtanding, ſtill continuing between the Gentlemen and Deputies, Father *Raphael* fearing ſome miſchievous conſequence of it in the preſence of the King, or that they ſhould make ſome diſpute for priority, the Father repreſented to the *Nazar*, that whereas the Deptuies were of two Orders, the one of Gentlemen, and the other of Merchants; therefore to take away all ſuſpition of jealouſie, it would do well, that His Majeſty would be pleas'd when he admitted them to their Audience, to permit the Gentlemen their ſeats on the one ſide, and the Merchants on the other. Which the *Nazar* approv'd, and the King allow'd of the ſame day.

The 27th of *September*, the King being at his Palace of *Scader-Abbas*, upon the bank of the River, between the Bridge of *Zulpha*, and the Bridge of *Schiras*, caus'd a preparation of Artificial Fire-works to be made, which came to above 2000 *l.* and early in the Morning caus'd notice to be given, that he intended that day to give audience to the King of *France*'s Deputies. Father *Raphael* alſo had Order to be ready with the Deputies, to the end, the *Mehemender*, or Maſter of the Ceremonies, might not be oblig'd to wait. Accordingly that very day the *Mehemender* came to *L'Eſtoile*'s Houſe, and from thence conducted the Deputies, with all their Train, and the reſt of the Franks then reſident in thoſe parts all mounted on Horſe-back, with a march ſo ſlow and grave, and for the advantage of the ſight ſo far about, that it was almoſt Night before they arriv'd at *Scader-Abbas*; at what time the *Mehemender* enter'd the Palace alone, leaving the Merchants at the Door. In the mean while, the Merchants believing that Father *Raphael* did not favour them ſo much as the Gentlemen, cry'd out aloud, that they would have an Interpreter alſo for themſelves, or elſe would go no farther. Father *Raphael*, who acted only by the *Nazar*'s Order, and for the advantage of the *French* Nation, told them, that whither they went any farther or no it was all one to him: that for his part he was not there as an Interpreter, either for the one or the other, but only in obedience to the King's commands.

In the mid'ſt of this debate the *Mehemender* return'd to carry the Deputies to their Audience; five hundred Musketeers being rank'd in order upon the bank of the River, to give them a Volley as they paſs'd along. The *Mehemender*'s march at firſt was ſlow and grave, but approaching the place where the King was, and from whence he had a view of the Deputies, he caus'd them to double their pace to the foot of the Steps, where the Lackeys took off their Shooes; and from thence they proceeded into the Hall of Audience, where the *Kans*, and other great Lords were

ſitting.

ſitting. Upon each ſide ſtood the Youth of Quality, ſumptuouſly clad in Tiſſue of Gold and Silver, their Cloaks and Mantles being lin'd with Martins, Sables, and other rich Furs. The Deputies being come into the King's preſence, the *Mehemender* caus'd them to kneel, and bow their Heads to the Ground three times: That done, he caus'd them to riſe, and lead up *Lalin* by the hand alone, as being the perſon who had in charge the preſenting of the Letter to the King. After him follow'd *Boulaye*, and the reſt of the Deputies, and thus they mounted up to the place where ſate the *Athemadoulet*, and the *Nazar*. The King was ſeated upon a Scaffold ſomewhat higher then the reſt, encompas'd with 150 young Gentlemen magnificently clad, to whom the *Sieur Lalin*, at the head of the Deputies, made his compliments in *French*, and then humbly preſented the Kings Letter, ſeal'd with a flat Seal upon a flying *Label*, enclos'd in an Embroider'd Box, with the Arms of *France* and *Navar*, in relief, upon the Lid. Father *Raphael* explain'd to the King the effect of *Lalin*'s Speech. After which the King gave a little bow with his Head, and at the ſame time gave a ſign to the Maſter of the Ceremonies to carry them back to their places. Being come to the bottom of the Hall, where the Officers had Order to ſeparate the Gentlemen from the Merchants, the Officers by miſtake put *Boulaye* with two of the Merchants, and *Mariage* one of the Merchants with *Lalin*, which made *Boulaye* cry out aloud in the *Turkiſh* Language *Menbeg-Zaddè*, I am a Gentleman; but the thing being done, and the King being preſent, there was no help. Then the *Perſian* Muſick began to play for a quarter of an Hour; which having given over, the Maſter of the Ceremonies came again, and carried up Father *Raphael*, and the two Gentlemen, as he ſuppos'd, of which *Mariage* by the forementioned miſtake happen'd to be one, again to the King: at what time *Lalin* with a comely grace made his Harangue, and ſet forth the occaſion of his Deputation to His Majeſty, of which His Majeſty teſtifi'd his good liking by a nod of his Head. For *Lalin* had a handſom preſence, and ſpake with an acceptable Tone, and his magnificent Habit very much added to the comely Air of his Perſon. The Speech was expounded by Father *Raphael*; which when he had done, the King ask'd the Deputies ſeveral Queſtions, and then with his hand made them a ſign to retire to their places, beck'ning at the ſame time to Father *Raphael* to ſtay; and cauſing him to come near him, more particularly inform'd himſelf of the Power of the King of *France*, the Extent of his Dominions, his Military Diſcipline, and his Councils: of all which the Father gave him the beſt accompt he could, and then with the King's leave, retir'd to his place. This Scene being over, a Flagon of Gold, and a Glaſs were ſent to the Deputies, attended with a ſhort Banquet of Fruits, and other ſorts of Food; the Inſtrumental and Vocal Muſick playing all the while. Which being over, the King again ſent for *Lalin*, *Mariage*, and Father *Raphael*, and after a ſhort Diſcourſe, having diſmiſs'd all but father *Raphael*, he fell into a diſpute with him touching the Unity of the Divine Nature, the neceſſity of one Prophet, and how *Mahomet* was the Seal and Crown of all Prophets. He ſeem'd to admire that the *Franks*, who had the Reputation of being People of Wit and Diſcretion, could think *Jeſus Chriſt* to be a God: to all which particulars, the Father endeavour'd to give the King the beſt ſatisfaction he could. But then, Father *Raphael* being deſirous that the three Deputies

ſhould

ſhould partake of the King's favour as the other two had done. Whereupon the King ſent for the other three Deputies, and having diſcours'd a while with *Boulaye*, while Father *Raphael* interpreted between them, in a ſhort while he diſmiſs'd them all again, but Father *Raphael*, with whom he enter'd into a more jocular Diſcourſe then the former, of the Colours, Black and White, and of the Beauty of the *French* Women, the King confeſſing that naturally he did not love Brown Women, the White complection being more agreeable to him, as being that complexion which alone compos'd the Beauty of Women. The Father modeſtly made his anſwer, that Beauty conſiſted only in fancy; for that the *Perſians* lov'd thick and full Eyebrows, which were not at all eſteem'd in *France*. Then the King caſting his Eyes upon the Box wherein the King of *France*'s Letter lay, he took out the Letter, and obſerving it to be a ſmall piece of Parchment, and not ſuch a one as he had receiv'd from ſeveral Princes and Potentates of *Europe*, nor indeed like thoſe which the *Jeſuits* had brought him formerly from the King of *France* himſelf, in a fair piece of Parchment, with a large Seal deep cut, he gave evident Demonſtrations of his contempt of it, and was about to have thrown it away. Father *Raphael* perceiv'd him to be out of humour, to whom the King in purſuance of his diſlike, ſaid, *Raphael*, I never receive open Letters without a Seal, take it, and let me ſee it no more, for I do not believe it comes from ſo great a King as the King of *France*, and at the ſame time made him a ſign to retire. He durſt do no otherwiſe then take the Letter, and ſo returning to his place, he told both *Lalin* and *Mariage* what had paſs'd in his Diſcourſe between him and the King. Two hours, after that, were ſpent in beholding the *Mummeries* of their common Dancers, a paſtime very uſual in *Perſia*. Which being over, the King ſent again for *Lalin*, *Mariage*, and the Father; and after ſome few Queſtions, to whith they gave the beſt Anſwers they could, he again diſmiſs'd both the Deputies, retaining only Father *Raphael* with him. The Father, then taking his opportunity, told the King, that he had always obſerv'd it to be the cuſtom of the *Athemadoulet* to cauſe the Letters, which the *European* Princes ſent His Majeſty, to be interpreted in his preſence. And therefore, added the Father, I beſeech Your Majeſty to permit me to give the King of *France*'s Letter to the *Athemadoulet*, to the end, it may be truly interpreted to him according to uſual cuſtom. Thereupon the King made a ſign to the Father to give it him, and glad he was to be ſo rid of it. The Father obſerving the King in a good humour, ſpoke to him in behalf of the other three Deputies, that he would be pleas'd to admit them to be ſent for a ſecond time, in regard the others had been ſent for three times. But the King told him, it was enough for him to ſpeak to the Gentlemen, let his Miniſters talk with the Merchants. The Father being then diſmiſs'd, he ſent for *Lalin* alone, for whom he ſhew'd himſelf to have a very great kindneſs and affection; and at the ſame time commanded the *Nazar* to bring him the next day, together with Father *Raphael*, and *Lagis* the *Geneveſe*, who was retain'd in his Service, to Court, for that he intended to be merry with them. Then he went on, and told *Lalin*, that ſo ſoon as the *French* Ships were arriv'd, he would ſend an Embaſſadour to the King of *France*, and make a ſtrict Alliance with him. *Lalin* reply'd, that His Majeſty of *France* deſir'd nothing more. Why then, reply'd the King, is not my Alliance ſufficient

cient, but that you muſt go ſeek the Alliance of the Blacks, from whom you will not draw thoſe advantages, with which you flatter your ſelves? For you muſt know, that the Deputies kept their affairs ſo ſecret, that no body knew of them but all the World, the Servants as well as the Maſters. Not conſidering, that the *Perſians* are good Politicians, and that that Court is never without Spies. Therefore the King knew, that as ſoon as the Deputies had diſpatch'd at his Court, they were to depart for the *Indies*, with which Nation he keeps no good Correſpondence. And for that reaſon, he was not a little offended with them, though they endeavour'd to perſuade him, that their Errand to the *Indies* was only for Linnen and Spices.

The Deputies preſented to the King a very fair *Fuzee*, together with the Kings Picture, in little, drawn to the Life, which was ſo much the more eſteem'd, becauſe at the ſame time ſeveral large Cuts had been brought to *Iſpahan*, and preſented to the King, which perfectly agreed with the Picture in Oyl, by which the whole Court was convinc'd that it was the real Portraiture of the King. When theſe Preſents were laid before the King, he ask'd the Deputies, for which of the Eaſtern Nations the *French* had moſt affection; to whom M. *Lalin* made anſwer, that certainly for the *Perſian*; thereupon the King return'd, that certainly they had reaſon; for that the *Perſians* were white, like the *French*, and that it was impoſſible for them to have any affection for the *Indians* who were black.

At length the King, to ſhew the Deputies his higheſt favour, would have them drink the *HEZARD PICHE*, in a golden Cup, which holds about a Pint of *Paris*. He order'd the Wine to be the ſame which he drank himſelf, which was in a Bottle of Chryſtal Glaſs, ſtudded with Diamonds. *Lalin* drank couragiouſly, and ſo did *Mariage*; but Father *Raphael* made a fair excuſe, and got off. After midnight the *Zerhaftes*, or Table-Cloaths of Cloth of Gold were ſpread upon the Floor, and ſeveral roaſted Viands very hot of the Spice, and Diſhes of Salt Fiſh, purchas'd from the *Caſpian* Sea, were brought and ſet upon the Cloaths; together with ſeveral Paſtrie Meats, dry'd Raiſins, Comfits, Almonds, and Piſtaches, and other provocatives to drink. The repaſt being ended, ſeveral Buffons were brought in, who Sung and Danc'd after the *Turkiſh* faſhion, and made a hundred wry Mouths and ugly Faces. Among the reſt of the Divertiſements, there were two Men introduc'd, that play'd one againſt another with each a Battoon in his hand, with a piece of Linnen dipt in Naphta, ty'd to the end of the Stick, which caſt forth a very clear brightneſs in the dark; at the ſame time four artificial Whirle-Winds were made to riſe one after another, which were all hovering in the Air at once, and in a continual Agitation.

Three Hours after Midnight the Maſters of the Ceremonies came to raiſe the Deputies to take leave of the King; and ſo leading them to the lower end of the Hall, after a profound reverence, they retir'd, not one perſon beſide ſtirring out of his place, to the end they might have time to take their Shoes without confuſion. When they were gone, the King diſmiſs'd the Court, and then it is that the croud is ſo great, that not one in twenty but loſes their own, and gets whoſe-ever Shoes he can lay his hands on.

The Deputies and Father *Raphael* being upon their return home, by that time they got half way, met an Officer belonging to the *Athemadoulet*, who

who told Father *Raphael* that his Maſter expected the *French Begzades* at his Houſe by Ten a Clock next Morning, to treat them, by his Majeſties Order.

Father *Raphael*, *Lalin*, and *Boulaye*, were punctual to their time, and no ſooner did the *Athemadoulet* know of their arrival, but he came down into his Hall of Audience, to receive them, where he had alſo order'd a very fair Banquet to be ready for their entertainment. There Father *Raphael* left them, while he went with the *Athemadoulet*'s Secretary, to Tranſlate the King of *France*'s Letter into the *Perſian* Language; which being finiſh'd, and he come again into the Hall, after ſeveral Civilities paſt on both ſides, the Father and the Deputies return'd to *Zulpha*.

The Merchant Deputies offended at the Honour which the Gentlemen had receiv'd, would have gone in their Turn; but Father *Raphael* told them, that it was not the Cuſtom in *Perſia* to viſit the Prime Miniſter, without being ſent for. In the Evening, Father *Raphael*, and the *Begzades* received new Orders to attend the King, but the King ſtirr'd not out that Evening, ſo that their Journey was in vain.

The Merchants ſtill perceiving the Honours which were done the Gentlemen, and believing Father *Raphael* to be the cauſe of all, they began to rail at him, and give him foul Language, and threaten'd to write into *France* to give an accompt of his behaviour. Father *Raphael* netled at the Language of the Deputies, told them, that he had done what in him lay to procure them the ſame Honours, which the others had receiv'd, though they were ſo little ſenſible of it. That he would continue his endeavours for the Advancement of their Affairs, though not for their own ſakes, yet for the ſake of the Company, that had ſent them. Which anſwer, though it were ſharp enough, and ſhew'd that the Father was angry, yet he did not forget, that they were his Countrymen; ſo that he ventur'd to carry them twice to the Prime Miniſter of his own accord, contrary to the Cuſtom. The firſt time he was not to be ſpoken with. The ſecond time, he made an Errant to him with the three Deputies, to preſent him a Copy of the Letter from the Directors of the Company, in the *Perſian* Language; at which time he ſhew'd them the Deputies, acquainting him withal that thoſe were the Perſons with whom he was to treat in point of Trade. To which the *Athemadoulet* reply'd, that he had no Commiſſion from the King to meddle with thoſe Deputies, but only, to entertain the *Begzade* that brought the King's Letter, which he had already done. Thereupon the Father deſir'd him he would be pleas'd to ſpeak to the King to nominate Commiſſioners to treat with them, which the *Athemadoulet* promis'd to do. That day in the evening, a Meſſenger was ſent to Father *Raphael*, to acquaint him, that the King had appointed the *Nazar* to treat with the Deputies the next day, and to know their demands. Of which the Father gave the Deputies quick intelligence.

The next day, being the Firſt of *September*, Father *Raphael* fail'd not to be with the Deputies very early in the Morning, to bring them to the *Nazar*; but he was very much ſurpriz'd to ſee, that they would not go altogether, but ſtill loo'k with an evil Eye one upon another, and continued their former differences. To the end therefore that he might ſet things to rights, he went to the *Nazar*, and told him, that he thought it would be the beſt way for the Merchants Deputies to come

firſt,

firſt, becauſe that they were the Perſons with whom he was chiefly to Treat. The *Nazar* anſwer'd, that the King underſtood that they were all five in the ſame Commiſſion joyntly. To which, when the Father anſwer'd the ſecond time, that it would be the beſt way to do as he had propos'd; The *Nazar* with a Surly Countenance, why, What's the matter now? ſaid he to the Father; Are not you *French-men* aſham'd to be thus at odds one with another, and to give all the World, nay the very Foot-boys occaſion to diſcourſe of your Diviſions? What would they have us think of them and their Commiſſion? Are they ſo little afraid of offending the King? Or, is their King more indulgent then the King of *Perſia*, who would never pardon ſuch faults in his Subjects? To this rebuke the Father made no reply. Only he deſir'd the *Nazar*, that he might have two Horſe-men to attend the Deputies at *Zulpha*, telling the *Nazar* not a word of his deſign to bring the Merchants an Hour ſooner then the Gentlemen. This fell out to the Fathers deſire; For the Father ſent one of the Horſe-men to *Zulpha*, to the Gentlemen, with order to drink with them, and not to be over haſty, but to bring them fair and ſoftly along with him; with the other he made haſt to the Merchant Deputies, and cauſing them to double their pace, they got betimes to the *Nazar*'s Houſe, where they were civilly receiv'd. *Dupont* preſented the *Nazar* with the Deputies Commiſſion, tranſlated into the *Perſian* Language; after which they fell into a diſcourſe, which laſted above three quartes of an Hour, concerning the Cuſtoms, Tolls, and Quality of the Merchants, and the juſtneſs of the *French* in their Dealing. They had juſt finiſh'd their Diſcourſe of Trade, when the *Nazar* was advertiz'd, that the three Gentlemen were arriv'd; who thereupon deſir'd Father *Raphael* to go and receive them. The Father went and waited upon them in, neatly chiding them for having ſtay'd ſo long, and making the *Nazar* wait. Well ſaid he, now you are together, go into that Cabinet, and write down your demands, and the Articles of your Commiſſion. The Merchant Deputies, which had now diſcours'd with the *Nazar* what they had to ſay, were well enough content to enter into a General Conference with the Gentlemen. Then calling for Pen, Ink and Paper, they made a draught of their Demands, the chief of which were, three Years Immunity from Cuſtoms and Tolls, to begin from the time of the arrival of our Ships; and that after that, they ſhould enjoy all the Priviledges and Favours granted to other Nations. They alſo deſir'd precedence above all other Nations, when they ſhould be call'd to Court, as they ſuggeſted, that they had at the Court of the Grand Signior. And laſtly, they requir'd a Houſe for thoſe that belong'd to the Company, to live in the City.

Theſe demands were dictated word for word by Father *Raphael*, to the *Nazars* Secretary, in the Name of all the five Gentlemen; and becauſe the *Nazar*'s Secretary knew not how to pronounce them, the Father undertook to write them in the *Perſian* Character; which being done, and the writing read in the hearing of the Deputies, the *Nazar* took the Paper to preſent to the King.

Thus after a fair Banquet, accompany'd with Muſic, both Vocal and Inſtrumental, the Deputies were diſmiſs'd by the *Nazar*, who bid them rely upon his care; for that he would do them all the Favour that lay in his pow'r, and give them his Majeſties Anſwer in a ſhort time. The Deputies very well ſatisfy'd with the *Nazar*'s reception, ſent him

afterwards a Preſent, which was a Shame both to the Nation and the Company, that pretended to ſuch great and high things, and endeavour'd to fix an opinion of their Wealth and Grandeur among Strangers. For they ſent him only a *Tin Cup* Enamel'd, and eight little Caſes of Perſpectives, or Looking-Glaſſes, the whole not amounting to above 40 Crowns. They alſo made much ſuch another Preſent, but meaner, to the *Mirzatcker*, conſiſting of about a Dozen Pair of Gilt Sciſſars for Women. We muſt ſpeak the Truth: For they were not a little laught at for their ridiculous Preſents, which were the Scorn and Contempt of thoſe that receiv'd them, when the Deputies were gone.

To Father *Raphael* they preſented a Purſe, with 40 *Tomans*, or Six Hundred Crowns in it, believing that he would never accept of it; and indeed he refus'd it with ſcorn; not a little angry with them, that they ſhould have ſuch mean thoughts of him, as to believe him Mercenary.

Two days after, the *Nazar* gave notice to the Father, that the King had granted the *French* their Demands; and had order'd every one of them a *Calaat*, or a Veſt-Royal, and in reſpect of Superiority, a Horſe for Monſieur *Lalin*. That the Kings Anſwer and the *Grant* were both ready for the Directors of the Company, according to their deſire.

The King was then onward upon a journey to *Mazandran*, three days Travel from *Iſpahan*, at one of his Palaces, call'd *Tajabat*. A Pleaſant Situation, in the mid'ſt of a great Valley, ſhaded with Trees, and full of Villages.

The Ninth of *October*, came a Letter from the *Nazar*, to Father *Raphael*, ſignifyiug the King's Pleaſure, that both he and the Deputies ſhould repair to *Tajabat* with all ſpeed. Thereupon the Father and they made ſuch haſt, that in leſs than three days they got to *Tajabat*, where the *Nazar* order'd them to lye in the Houſe of an *Armenian* Renegado. The King ſent them immediately eight or ten bottles of Wine, with four Gold Diſhes, full of lovely Fruits, and Tapiſtries for their Dining Room. But theſe Preſents occaſion'd new Quarrels; For there being two Factions, and both living apart, there was a great diſpute who ſhould have this preſent. Father *Raphael*, having done all that poſſible he could to reconcile the buſineſs, and not being able to perſuade them, in a juſt Paſſion, bid them take their Swords and Piſtols, and go and decide the Quarrel in the Field. Till now, ſaid he, I have done all I could to conceal your deteſtable diviſions from the Court, which nevertheleſs, is but too well acquainted therewith: Is it your deſign to publiſh your own Ignominy, and to make not only your ſelves, but the whole Nation of the *French* ridiculous to the *Perſians?* At length they were ſo far reconcil'd, that one Room ſerv'd them to Feed, and conſequently the ſame Furniture. For the Father's reproofs had put them a little out of Countenance.

The Seventeenth of *October*, the *Mehemander* came to the Deputies Lodgings, and brought five Royal Veſts; The Richeſt, which was of Tiſſue of Gold, was for Monſieur *Lalin*; the next, not altogether ſo rich, for Monſieur *Boulaye*; and the other three of a lower price, for the Merchants; The value of the whole might amount to 600 Crowns, for which the *French* Deputies moſt generouſly gave the Officers that brought them 25 or 30 Crowns, as a Gratuity. The Officers of the Stable

Stable alſo brought two Horſes for the Gentlemen, for which they receiv'd ſix Crowns in Gold, as a reward. I confeſs, I ſhould have been aſham'd of ſuch a poorneſs of Spirit, at ſuch a time as that.

At length alſo the *Ragan* or Patent for the Company was deliver'd into the Hands of the Deputies, faithfully Tranſlated by Father *Raphael* to this Effect.

" That whereas the Merchants of the Kingdom of *France*, who are " favour'd by the Favour extreemly Royal, and the Juſtice exceſſively " Royal, being made conſtant in the hope and participation in the " time, have preſented their Petition, which is arriv'd at the Ear " of the Miniſters Commiſſioners for the Court of Grandeur and high " Fortune; Their Intentions and Demands have found the Viſage of " Acceptation, and we have ſtrictly commanded, that the Conſervatours " of Rights, Tolls and Priviledges, acknowledge them for exempt " and priviledg'd, during the ſpace of Three Years; and that there be " nothing demanded upon their Goods and Factories, conformable to " the requeſt of the Deputies, *&c.*

The next day, the *Mehemander Bachi*, came early in the Morning to attend the Deputies, and bring them with all ſpeed to the Court: Where being admitted into the Garden, they met the King a Horſe-back, and all the Court a Foot. The *Athemadoulet* held the King's Anſwer to the King of *France*, in a Bag of Cloth of Gold, Seal'd with the Kings Seal upon red *Spaniſh* Wax. The Sieur *Lalin* then, and the reſt of the Deputies were order'd to go neer and Kiſs the Kings Boot, who kept his Grandeur, without ſpeaking a word. When they had ſo done, the *Athemadoulet* calling them to him, there, ſaid he, there is the Anſwer for the *Grand Cha*, that is, for the King of the Kings of *France*. The Deputies having made their Obeyſances to the King, the whole Court took Horſe; and the King took the Road of *Cachan*; and within an Hour, that Campaign, which look'd like a thick peopl'd City, became as Deſert as the moſt part of *Perſia*.

The Deputies, having read over the Patent, began to find many defects, and *Mariage* would fain have follow'd the Court for amendments, and would have perſuaded *Lalin* and Father *Raphael* to have gone along with him. But Father *Raphael* over-perſuaded them to return firſt to their Lodgings at *Zulpha*, and there to hear the Patent diſtinctly read over, and to conſider better of it. When they came to *Zulpha*, and that they had debated upon the meer Letter of the *Patent*, then they were worſe mad then they were before. Then there were ſo many Cavils, ſo many Diſputes, ſo many Exceptions, and ſo many Expoſitions put upon the Words *Conformably* and *Reaſonably*, that they muſt get a Horſe back immediately. *Boulaye* ſtopp'd this fury for a while; So that after many Diſputes and Conſultations, it was agreed, that *Mariage*, as chief of the Negotiation, and *Lalin*, ſhould follow the Court; and that *Boulaye*, *Breber*, and *Dupont*, ſhould proceed forward to the *Indies*. The Sieur *L'Eſtoile*, and all the reſt of the *Franks*, were of opinion, that *Lalin* ſhould forthwith depart for *France*, with the King's Letter. But their Counſel was not follow'd, and ſo the Deputies divided themſelves: *Lalin* and *Mariage* to follow the Court, which was then remov'd as far as *Mazandran*: And the other three to purſue their Journey to the Eaſt *Indies*. The two former fain would have had Father *Raphael* have accompany'd them to the Court; but he fairly excus'd himſelf.

Neither would *L'Eſtoile* permit his Son, to whom he allow'd 20 *Tomans* a Year, to return to the Court, chooſing rather to ſend him to *Bander* with the other three. Whereupon, the Seventeenth of *November*, they ſet forward upon their Journey.

Du Pont, without doubt, was the moſt ſolid and judicious of all the Merchants, but he took it ſo to heart, to ſee the diſ-union among them, that he fell into a languiſhing Diſeaſe at *Iſpahan*, and dy'd not far from *Schiras*.

As for *Lalin* and *Mariage*, they left *Iſpahan* the Fifteenth of *December*, and arriv'd at Court ſoon after, where they lay a long time neglected, their Diviſions ſtill continuing, which made them contemptible to the *Perſians*, and ruin'd the Affairs of the Company. One Evening, the *Nazar* ſent them a Flow'r, adviſing them, that as that Flow'r never chang'd; ſo it became them not to vary in their Reſolutions. After a long and tedious ſtay, *Mariage* obtain'd ſome few impertinent Alterations in his Patent; and permiſſion to make Wine at *Schiras*, as the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and *Portugueſes* had.

With theſe Alterations they both leave the Court; and *Mariage* would certainly have accompany'd *Lalin*, who had an intention to ſee *Ardevil*, *Tauris*, and *Kom*, had he not been ſolicited to return to *Zulpha*, by a Young *Dalilah*, that had ſmitten his heart. For by the means of an old Woman, the Mother of one of his Lacqueys, he had debauch'd a young *Armenian* Virgin, whom he kept privately to himſelf; yet not ſo privately, but the noiſe thereof was quickly ſpread all over *Zulpha*. All the *Armenians* were ſcandaliz'd at it, and ſent to ſeize the Baud, to puniſh her, by their Laws, as ſhe deſerv'd. *Mariage* advertiz'd thereof, flew out of his Lodging to her aſſiſtance, and to protect her from Juſtice. But ſeeing the People in an uproar, and finding the Stones to flye too thick about his Ears, he was forc'd to mind his own ſafety, and to ſeek for ſhelter in the next Houſe where he could be admitted. But the Buſineſs was not ſo put up, for the *Armenians*, wondring to ſee that a Deputy of an Illuſtrious Company, who was come to the Court of *Perſia* upon ſo ſerious an Affair, ſhould do ſo much wrong to his Nation, by publickly appearing in ſo ſhameful an Action, and ſo unworthy of a Perſon in public Employment, that they reſolv'd to proſecute him all manner of ways. They were reſolv'd, to that end, to have ſent into *France* an Expreſs, to have Complain'd to the King of his ill Management and bad Behaviour. But *Mariage* at length reſtor'd the *Armenian* Girl which he had kept cloſe lock'd up; after which time the *Armenians* never look'd upon him but with ſcorn and contempt.

Lalin being return'd to *Iſpahan*, departed thence the 22*th* of *November*, 1666. for *Bander*, with a Reſolution, to Travel into the *Indies*. But he fell ſick at *Bander*, and thinking to return to *Schiras*, for the Air's ſake, he dy'd by the way at a Village call'd *Bend-Ali*. A Gentleman endow'd with noble Qualities, and whoſe Gentile and Generous behaviour was an honour to his Nation.

The Thirtieth of the ſame *November*, *Mariage* alſo left *Iſpahan*, and departed for *Bander*, with one Father *Mercier*, a *Jeſuite*, whom he took along with him as his Almoner, and *Lewis L' Eſtoile*, his *Kalmachi*, or Interpreter: There he ſtay'd four Months for the arrival of the Ships, but none coming, and the heats encreaſing, he reſolv'd to ſpend the reſt of the Year at *Schiras*. As for the *Jeſuit*, and young *L' Eſtoile*, becauſe

becauſe there was no Converſe but with the people of the Country, they return'd back to *Iſpahan*.

Boulaye and *Beber* arriv'd at *Suratte* the firſt of *April*, 1666. Being come to the *Bar*, they ſent to Father *Ambroiſe*, chief of the Miſſion of the *Capuchins*, who preſently attended them with a Sloop, which he had obtain'd of the Governour, and brought them home to the *Capuchin*'s Houſe, where they ſtay'd till they departed for *Agra*. Sometime before was arriv'd there a Merchant of *Aleppo*, who had run himſelf out at heels, and of a *Maronite* Chriſtian was become a *Roman* Catholick, in hopes to patch up his broken Fortune, being in truth a meer Counterfeit, and a Hypocrite: For theſe *Levantine* Chriſtians ſeldom change their Religion, but upon ſome motive of Intereſt; and when they have got a good Sum together, they preſently whip back again into their own Country, and for a ſmall piece of Money obtain abſolution of their Patriarch. Thus ſeveral of the Religious *Franks* that travel out of *Europe* into *Aſia* are often deceiv'd, making a great noiſe of their Converſion of the *Levantines*, when the Converſion, at the bottom, is only an outward Converſion, and a meer piece of Gullery. Among many others that I could relate, I will only mention one, of a *Franciſcan*, call'd *Paul Stella*, who coming with 400 Crowns, or thereabouts, in his Pocket, for his ſubſiſtance, a *Maronite* ſmelt him out, and under the pretence of giving him the Honour of his Converſion to the Catholick Religion, never left him till he had ſuck'd him dry, and turn'd the Channel of his Money. This *Maronite* Merchant before mention'd, whoſe Name was *Chelebi*, ſhew'd himſelf very zealous for the *Capuchins*, and he had reaſon enough; for the *Capuchins* of *Aleppo* had been very ſerviceable to him, and had help'd him in his Affairs when they were at the loweſt ebb. They were overjoy'd at his arrival at *Surat*, and gave it out immediately that it was he that had given them Money for the building their Houſe and Church. But when I came to look over my Accompts, I found that the Money that had pay'd for the Ground and a good ſhare of the building, came out of my Purſe; Father *Ambroiſe* having promis'd that I ſhould be reimburs'd upon my return to *Paris*. But I never heard more of my Money, nor indeed did I ever look after it.

The reaſon why the *Capuchins* were willing that the *Aleppo* Merchant, who never had disburs'd a Peny, ſhould own the Expences of their Houſe and Church, is this; becauſe no *Frangui* Chriſtian is permitted in the *Indies* to enjoy the propriety of Houſes, or to make any reparations of thoſe which they hire, without the leave of the Governour of the place. Both the *Engliſh* and *Holland* Companies are only *Leſſees* to the *Indians*; the *Great Mogul* having ſuffer'd from the Chriſtians in ſeveral places, where under pretence of repairing or adorning certain Houſes, which they poſſeſs'd by way of propriety, they have ſo well fortifi'd them, that when the Governours have come to require any Duties from them, they have made them good ſo long, till they have forc'd the Governours to yield to their demands.

So ſoon as the Deputies were landed at *Surat*, they preſently ſpread abroad a report, that there were ſeven or eight Ships belonging to the *French* Company that would ſuddainly follow them. The *Aleppo* Merchant was overjoy'd to hear the News, and was in great hopes, that by the favour of the *Capuchins*, and the advantage which he had of ſpeaking

ſeve-

ſeveral of the *Aſiatick* Languages, that the greateſt part of the *French* Merchandize would paſs through his hands. Upon theſe hopes he made great Treats, and preſented large Preſents to the Deputies, and maintain'd their Servants at his own Charges. He found the Deputies to be ſufficiently covetous, but he was ſtill in great expectations, that his civil Entertainments, and the Preſents which they receiv'd from him, would oblige them to acknowledge his kindneſs, and that one day he ſhould find himſelf repay'd by the management of their buſineſs; but he was foully miſtaken. For it coſt him above 1500 *Rupies*, part which he ſpent upon them himſelf at *Surat*, and partly what his Nephew furniſh'd them withall at *Agra* for their preſent occaſions.

Three or four days after their arrival at *Surat*, the *Engliſh* Preſident ſent to viſit them by ſome of his Council, and would have waited on them himſelf, but that he lay then ill of the Gout. The *Holland* Commander did the ſame with his Council, ſhewing all the civilities and kindneſſes that lay in his power; and a few days after invited them ſolemnly to a great Feaſt, with as many as they could bring along with them. In the midſt of their Jollity the King's Health was ſent about, and after that, the Proſperity of the *French* Company; which oblig'd *Boulaye* to begin another Health to the happy Progreſs of the *Holland* Company. But when it came to Mr. *Beber*'s turn to drink it, notwithſtanding all that *Boulaye*, and the reſt of the Company could ſay to him, they could not oblige him to pledge it. Nay, he did worſe then this, for he threw the Glaſs, Wine, and all at his Feet; and when he had ſo done, he roſe in a heat from the Table, and after a pitiful manner left the Company, and went home to his Lodging, though without any attendance. The *Hollanders* were ſo diſcreet as to take little notice of his folly, but remain'd very merry at the Table with Mr. *Boulaye* till Midnight. But they could not forbear telling their Friends, that they wonder'd, in regard there were ſo many diſcreet and ingenious Men in *France*, that the Company ſhould make choice of ſuch a Fool for the management of ſuch an important Affair as he was ſent about; and that they foreſaw he would do the Company no ſmall injury.

While the Deputies ſtay'd at *Surat*, the Governour of the place, at the requeſt of Father *Ambroiſe*, entertain'd them, and ſhew'd them all the reſpect that could be ſhew'd to Strangers. One day that they were in Diſcourſe together, he told them, that if they would follow his Counſel, he adviz'd them not to go to Court till their Ships were arriv'd. But ſeeing that they were reſolv'd to the contrary, he offer'd them Money, Horſes, and Souldiers, to attend them, with Letters of Recommendation to ſome of the Grandees of the Court. The *Chabander*, or Provoſt of Merchants, made them the ſame offers that the Governour had done; all which they refus'd very obſtinately. More then this, they behav'd themſelves very ill, in reference to the Preſents which the Governour and the *Cha-Bander* ſent them, for they gave their Servants that carry'd them not a *Doight*, which is look'd upon as a very dirty action in the *Indies*. For the *Indians* never give their Servants any other Wages, then what they get by carrying Preſents from their Maſters. And the more they have given them, the more Honour it is, both for him that receives, and him that ſends the Preſent.

The Deputies then being reſolv'd for *Agra*, hir'd their Waynes, and their Oxen to carry their Luggage, and five and twenty Souldiers for

their

their Convoy. They likewiſe made a great noiſe, of their being honour'd from ſo Great a King, and ſo Noble a Company. Upon which ſcore, they ought to have had five or ſix Wains for their Baggage, every one their *Pallaquin* and a Led-horſe, and every one a Flag with their Arms or their Cyphers, which is the gentile way of Travelling in *India*, and as I was always wont to travel. But they took but five and twenty Souldiers, whereas they ought to have hir'd an hundred and fifty at the rate they talk'd.

But inſtead of ſo doing, three Days Journey from *Surat*, *Beber* began to quarrel with *Boulaye*, that they had too great a Train at their heels, for which he blam'd the Adviſe of Father *Ambroiſe* and the Merchant of *Aleppo*: That for his part he would pay for no more than four Souldiers, and that if he would not ſend the reſt back, he ſhould pay them himſelf. Upon which, they agreed to ſend back the ſix Souldiers which the Governour had order'd to attend them as far as *Brampour*; upon their diſmiſſment, not giving them ſo much as the Worth of a Pipe of Tobacco.

When they came to *Agra*, the Nephew of *Chelebi*, the *Aleppo* Merchant, fail'd not to wait upon them, and to offer them his ſervice. There was at that time a *French* Chirurgeon, whoſe Name was *James*, he ſpake good *Indian*, and was married in the Country to the Daughter of a *Portugal*: The *Nahab*, the King's Uncle and Grand Vizier, had a great kindneſs for this Chirurgeon; and by his procurement it was, that the Deputies had Audience of *Giafer-Kan*, for ſo was the *Nahab* call'd. They requeſted of him, that by his favour they might preſent a Letter from their King to the *Great Mogul*, as alſo that they might be admitted to treat concerning the Settlement of a *French* Trade in the Countrey. The *Nahab* told them, that he would ſpeak to the King, and take care that they ſhould be admitted to their Audience in a little time. With that he order'd them to be conducted to the Lodgings appointed for them, which they found ready furniſh'd with all neceſſary proviſion for the Belly; but their Lacqueys and Servants were to cook it themſelves; for it is not here as it is in *Perſia*, where the Meat is ſent ready dreſt out of the King's Kitchin to the Embaſſadors Table.

The *Nahab*, who underſtood that they had brought no Preſents, neither for him, nor any of the Grandees of the Court, nor for the King himſelf, was not over haſty to admit them to their Audience. So that it was above a Month before the Deputies could ſet Eyes upon the *Nahab* again, though the Chirurgeon, and other *Franguis*, us'd all their Intereſt in their behalf. Being very weary of this Delay, they gave it out, that they could ſtay no longer at *Agra*, in regard they were to be at *Surat* upon the Arrival of the *French* Veſſels. Upon which falſe Report, the *Nahab* ſent to them for the King their Maſter's Letter, that he might preſent it to the *Great Mogul* himſelf. Upon this Demand of their Letter, they were quite blank, not being acquainted with the manner how the Kings of *India* receive thoſe Letters which are brought them by Embaſſadors: For they never receive any with their own hands, but ſuch as come from the *Grand Signior*: All other Letters, according to the Grandeur of the Kings that ſend them, are put into the hands of the Grand Officers of the Court, who preſent them to the King: And the more potent the King is, from whom the Letter comes, through the fewer hands it paſſes before it is preſented

to

to the *Great Mogul*. For the preſent State of *Europe* and *Aſia* is very well known in the Court of the *Great Mogul*, and the Difference between the Soveraigns of both, in reference to their Grandeur and Puiſſance. Neither is there a Stranger that enters into the Kingdom, of whom the Governour of the Frontier Province does not give advice to the *Nahab*; and if he appear to be a perſon of Ingenuity, there's no help for't, but he muſt go to Court, where he is careſs'd, on purpoſe to get information of the Country from whence he comes.

But to return to the Deputies, they obſtinately refuſ'd to ſend the Letter to the *Nahab*: At which he was not a little troubl'd; fearing leſt upon the Arrival of the *French* Veſſels, it might be the occaſion of a Rupture, and hinder the concluſion of the Treaty of Commerce. Moreover he was not a little jealous, leſt they ſhould ſeize upon the *Great Mogul*'s Veſſels in their Voyage to *Mecca*, as *Hugh Lambert* the *Holland* Pyrat did, who took all the Baggage belonging to the Queen of *Viſapour*, when ſhe was going to *Mecca* and *Medina*. The *Nahab* having made theſe Reflexions to himſelf, ſo wrought with the King, that he conſented that the Deputies, contrary to cuſtom, ſhould be admitted into his preſence, there to give the Letter into the Hands of the Prime Miniſter, to be by him preſented to the King. This, as I ſaid before, was an unuſual favour; and yet the Deputies were ſo obſtinate, as to reject this Propoſition, ſaying, that they would rather return home, and carry back their Letters, then not preſent them to the King themſelves. This obſtinacy of theirs, to maintain their own conceited humour againſt the Cuſtom of the Country, was very much blam'd by all people, that admir'd at the patience of the *Nahab*, who at length ſent them word, they might take their own courſe, ſince they refuſ'd the Honours which he would have done them. After that, the Deputies ſtaid ten or twelve days in the City, flattering themſelves, that the *Nahab* would comply with their Folly; but they were deceiv'd. For the *Nahab* offended at their idle carriage, took ſuch order, that not one perſon living, either Merchant or other, went to viſit them all the while. So that they reſolv'd to return to *Surat*, in expectation of their Ships.

When they left *Agra*, they went and lay two Leagues off from the City in the Field, ſetting up one Tent apiece, (and thoſe pitiful ones Heaven knows) to ſerve for them and their Servants, whereas they might have lodg'd with more ſecurity in a fair Inn that ſtood not far off. Now it is the Cuſtom at the *Great Mogul*'s Court, that every Night ſome Prince or great Lord keeps Guard in his turn for a Week together, having under him five or ſix thouſand Horſe, that beat the Road for three or four Leagues round the place where the King quarters. A Party of theſe Horſemen ſcouting by the Deputies Tents, and enquiring whoſe they were, one of the Servants reply'd, that they were the Tents of the *French* Deputies: of which the Horſemen gave immediate notice to their Captain, at that time the Grand Provoſt of the Empire. A Perſon handſom, well endow'd, and a great Lover of Strangers, who had raiſ'd himſelf by his Valour, as being an *Abyſſin* by Nation. So ſoon as he underſtood that they were the *French* Deputies, he ſent one of his principal Officers, with fifty Horſe, to deſire them to give them leave to guard them that Night, becauſe they were in no ſecurity, and for that if they came to any miſchief the Head of their Captain

Captain muſt anſwer for it. But they very ill receiv'd the kind proffer of the Provoſt, proudly anſwering, that they were ſtrong enough to guard themſelves, and the firſt that came near them ſhould know whether the *French* had Courage or no, adding withal, that if their Captain were afraid, they would guard him, with a deal of other ſcurrilous riffraff which very much ſurpriz'd the Officers.

The next day they ſet up their Tents about a quarter of a League farther, becauſe they expected ſomething to be brought them from *Agra*. The *Conteval* or Grand Provoſt admiring they made ſuch ſlow journeys, and that they had now pitch'd in a more dangerous place then before, ſent the ſame Horſemen with the ſame proffer, or elſe that they would be pleas'd to lye in an Inn where they might be ſafe. *Boulaye* was of the mind that ſo kind an offer ſhould not be refus'd: but *Beber* gave them nothing but bad language; reviling their Captain, that he was afraid they ſhould go and lye with his wives, offering if he pleas'd to go and guard them. He ſpoke half Portugueſe, half Italian, which being a kind of *Lingua Franca*, ſome of the Horſemen made a ſhift to underſtand him, and having made a report to the Grand Provoſt of his Inſolent Anſwer, the Lord was not a little nettl'd at it, and therefore reſolv'd to be reveng'd. About midnight fourſcore or a hundred Horſe came and cut all the Cords of *Bebers* Tent, thinking to have let it fall about his ears. But he found a way to quit himſelf by the aſſiſtance of his Servant; and endeavour'd to eſcape to the Houſe of a *Dervich* on the other ſide of a ſmall Rivolet, nere the place where the Tents were ſet up. But the Moon ſhining as bright as day, he could not hide himſelf from the purſuit of the Horſemen, who ſhot at him, and with their Arrows wounded him in three places, once in the thigh and twice in the buttocks. *Boulaye* hearing the noiſe which the Horſemen made, peep'd out of his Tent, and ſeeing ſo many Horſemen in purſuit of *Beber*, was not a little daunted. He was afraid of running the ſame *riſco*; but not having long to conſider, he took his purſe of Duckets, and fled till he got about half a league off, where he lay all night under a great Tree. But by the conſequence he found that the Horſemen had nothing to ſay to him; being ſatisfi'd when they ſaw *Beber* fall, as believing him dead. For had they not thought him ſo, they would never have left him, till they had quite done his buſineſs. But to colour the buſineſs, that it might not ſeem a point of revenge they broke open all *Beber's* Cheſts; that it might ſeem as if he had bin robb'd; but they found very little or nothing to enrich themſelves.

So ſoon as *Beber's* boy ſaw that the Horſemen were gone, he ran to the Town for a *Pallanquin* to carry his Maſter thither. Being brought to the Town they laid him in the Jeſuits houſe, where *Boulaye* alſo arriv'd not long after and took up his Quarters, to the great conſolation of the Jeſuits, whoſe Revenues are but ſmall in thoſe parts, where there are no devout people to leave them Legacies. Their Ordinary was very ſparing; but it was ſuch as the Deputies muſt be glad of. Though it were a feaſt for *Boulaye*, who was not wont to make better chear. For a Sheeps head, of his own purchaſe, uſually ſerv'd him two meals. Which made him ridiculous to the *Franks*, who liv'd after a more ſplendid rate. At *Smyrna* and *Aleppo*, when he was not invited by the *Franguis*, he had recourſe to his Sheeps tongues, or a cold piece of double Tripe, which he carri'd to the poor *Cabaretts* of the *Greeks*, taking his Chopin of Wine

to wash it down: and such was his good husbandry that what was left was order'd to be set up for his supper. One day he had drank a little more then he had bled, and the *Franguis* found him a sleep in the street, about a hundred paces from the Cabaret. They had so much charity for him as to remove him to his lodging, lest other Nations should laugh at the choice which they had made of an Envoy to settle the Trade of such a considerable Company. As for *Beber*, who lov'd good Chear when it cost him nothing, as being a true exemplar of covetousness, he complain'd of the *Jesuits* entertainment, though they out-run the Constable to treat him like a Deputy. His man who had more wit than he, and plainly saw what a trouble he was to his Hosts, made them a merry relation of the Noble Table which his Master kept for him, how he had made provision of a Barrel of Herrings; which when Invitations fail'd, he warily fed upon, rubbing his bread with the tail to give it a *haut goust*. For my part, said the Boy, I am but a poor Servant, yet I have made a shift to spend an hundred and fifty Crowns which I had got in the service of the Consul of *Smyrna*. 'Twas my misfortune to be inveigl'd out of his service, for I was with a Noble Master where I got Money; but in this man's service I have eaten all that I had got before. Two days after I arriv'd at *Agra*, and heard of *Beber*'s being wounded and where he lay, and went to give him a visit. And as I never went unprovided in my travels with all things necessary, I had some Oyntments and Plasters, which were very serviceable to him.

It was an easie thing to observe that *Boulaye* was glad of the opportunity of *Beber*'s being wounded, that he might have the sole honour of giving the Letter to the King. For he pretended to be the true *Envoy* from the King of *France*, and that *Beber* was only sent to bear him company. *La Boulaye* therefore believing that the business would take effect, perswaded the Chyrurgion already mention'd to solicit the *Nahab* who had a kindness for him, so close, that thereby the *Nahab* permitted him to bring the Letter. But *Boulaye* who thought he should give it himself to the King, was much surpriz'd when he saw that the *Nahab*, who had got the Letter into his own power, gave it to one of the meanest Officers of his Court, who by the Prime Minister's order, gave it to another, and he to a third, who brought it back to the *Nahab*, who at length presented it to the King, but not in the presence of *Boulaye*.

And thus you see the Effect of the ridiculous pride of the Deputies, *Boulaye* was forc'd to stay in an outer Court, having two more to pass thorough before he came into the King's Quarter. Where, while he remain'd big with expectation, word was brought him, that the King would return an Answer to the King his Master, so soon as the Ships should be arriv'd; and so he was forc'd to go back to his Lodging with the melancholy dissatisfaction of a frustrate hope.

The wounded Gentleman being new cur'd, but still very lame, desir'd Audience of the *Nahab*, that he might have justice for the mischief done him by an Assassination and a Robbery. The *Nahab* readily admitted him, limping when he came into his presence worse then when he first left his bed. The first Compliment he made was of the Wounds he had receiv'd, and then he demanded satisfaction for the loss of his Blood, and the Goods which had bin stolen from him. The *Nahab* promis'd him to inform the King of the business, assuring him that he should have no wrong done him upon the high-way within the Territories

ritories where he had to do. Four or five days after, the *Nahab* sent to *Beber* to know how much the Loss which he pretended to have receiv'd amounted to. *Beber* brought in an account of four and twenty thousand *Roupies*, or 12000 Crowns, and for the loss of his Blood, he left it to the Kings Generosity.

His Accompt he made out thus:

Imprimis. A Note for the value of six thousand *Roupies* which he had lent a Merchant when he departed for *Marseilles*, which Note was among the Papers he had lost. As to that, the *Nahab* ask'd him whether the Notaries in *France* did not make an Entry of such publick Acts as were sign'd before them? *Beber* made answer, that he should never be paid, if he could not produce the same Paper that had bin taken from him, and that he could not demand his Money without it. The *Nahab* replying, that that was contrary to the Custom of all Nations, and that he knew it could not be as he said, added withal, that he should take no care for his satisfaction in that particular. After that he read on.

Item. Five thousand *Roupies* in Gold and Silver Money.

Item. Four thousand *Roupies* in Gold Lace and Galoon to trim his Clothes.

Item. Two Diamond Rings at two thousand one hundred *Roupies*.

Item. Two other Rings, a Topaz, and another of sea-green water, which cost three hundred *Roupies*.

Item. His Clothes, his Linnen, and for a Chest of Medicaments, which might be worth 4000 *Roupies*, of which he had procur'd his Chirurgeon to give in a Bill.

Item. A Chain of Gold valu'd at 500 *Roupies*. In all amounting to 24000 *Roupies*, as I said before.

Two or three days after, the King caus'd an Order to be deliver'd to him for the payment of his Money at the Treasury-Chamber. Upon which Order, he agreed with a Merchant to be paid at *Surat*. And when he was ready to depart, the King commanded 12000 *Roupies* to be paid him for the loss of his Blood. But that sum he never receiv'd. For being in haste to be gone to *Surat*, and failing to present the *Treasurer*, he drill'd him out so long, that his patience was quite tir'd, and so he was forc'd to go without it.

I could never understand the Policy of the *Great Mogul* to pay *Beber* the sum which he said had bin taken from him; when the *Nahab* knew to a thread what he had lost, and had given in an accompt thereof to the King; the whole not amounting to 2000 *Roupies*. And as for the *Franguis*, so soon as they understood that he had demanded 4000 *Roupies* for his Chirurgeons Chest, they all cry'd out that it was a meer cheat. For a few days before *Beber* arriv'd at *Agra*, the Chirurgeon had receiv'd 200 *Roupies* by the Charity of the *Franks* to return to *Surat*, and he fell sick the next day that this Bill was presented to the *Nahab*.

After the *Mogul* had read the King of *France*'s Letter, the *Nahab* by order of his Master, order'd a Lodging to be provided for the Deputies, which overjoy'd the Jesuits, who were by that means rid of two very troublesome Guests. As for *Boulaye*, in regard the King had signify'd his pleasure, that he would not return any answer to the King's Letter till the arrival of the Ships, he never troubled himself any farther; but staid till the waters were fallen, that he might go to *Bengale*, and from thence to *Golconda* to settle a Trade in those parts. But *Beber* moil'd like

a horſe, and did nothing but run to and fro, to know the King's pleaſure touching the ſettlement of Trade. But the *Nahab* either laugh'd at him, or took little notice of what he ſaid. For indeed by *Beber*'s outward appearance, and deportment, no man could make any other judgment of him, but that he was a poor ſpirited fellow, and one that knew not what it was to live. For all the *Europeans* that travel into *Perſia* and the *Indies* are always richly habited; nor would any of them keep *Beber* company, who by his Habit look'd rather like a Footman, than a Deputy of a Royal Company of Trade. At length a whim took him to make himſelf a ſuit of painted Calicut, after the *French* Faſhion, the like whereof had never been ſeen in the Country; the whole Suit not ſtanding him in above 13 *Livres* and 13 *Sous*. For the trimming of his new Suit he took off the Ribbands of his old Cloaths, which he was two days lathering, and ſmoothing with a Taylers Gooſe. When he had got this rare Habit upon his back, he went to viſit the *Nahab*, who was then attended by the Principal Lords of the Court. Who when they ſaw him enter, fell all a gazing upon him, and ask'd one another whether that *Frangui* were turn'd *Faquir*, or a *Dervich* of *Hoſſen Mamout*, which they uſually call the ragged *Saint*. For you muſt know, that all the *Faquirs* or *Dervichs* that are of this Order, never apparel themſelves but with ſuch rags as they pick up in the ſtreets, and if they meet with any pieces better than other, they make of them a kind of Galoon to trim the reſt. They alſo carry half Pikes, with a great company of Tatters faſten'd to the end of them, to make a ſhew of their beggery. *Beber*'s Habit very much ſurpriz'd the *Nahab*, and all others that beheld him ſo ridiculouſly accouter'd. As he paſs'd one morning by my window, I bid him good morrow, telling him withal, that he look'd more ſpruce and gay than he us'd to do. He reply'd, that he had reaſon ſo to do, for that he had receiv'd Letters from *Surat*, by which he had advice, that the Country people upon the Coaſt of *Cape St. John* had decry'd four Veſſels out at Sea, which they could not make to be either *Engliſh*, or *Hollanders*, from whence he concluded that they were the Companies ſhips; and that he was going to the *Nahab* with the News. But I prevented him at that time, telling him that I had often obſerv'd that raſcally ſort of people to come both to the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, with ſuch kind of Intelligence, on purpoſe to get Money; when indeed they had never ſeen any ſuch ſight, and admoniſhing him not to believe Reports upon ſuch ſlight foundations. I ask'd him what date his Letters bore? he told me, thirty days ago. Then, ſaid I, if the diſcovery had bin true, the *Nahab* would have had notice of it in fourteen; and then he would certainly have told you of it, or my ſelf; for it is but two days ſince I took my leave of him. Thereupon he took my counſel and reſolv'd for *Surat* in a few days.

Three days after that the Chirurgeon had given in his Bill for the Cheſt of Medicaments that he had loſt among *Beber*'s Baggage, he was ſo touch'd in Conſcience, that he fell ſick, and dy'd in two days. Upon his death-bed he ask'd pardon of God for the Cheat which he had conſented to, to ask 4000 *Roupies* for that which was really worth but four hundred; 200 of which he had receiv'd from the Charity of the *Franguis*, the reſt upon the ſale of a Horſe.

For my part, finding that *Beber* was reſolv'd for *Surat*, I made what haſt I could out of *Agra*, to be quit of his company. But the ſecond day

day after my departure, having ſet up my tent by a Rivers ſide, juſt as I was going to dinner I ſpy'd *Beber* coming, nor could I get rid of him afterwards till I came to *Surat*. So that we were forc'd to travel together, though he committed a thouſand Impertinencies by the way. Among the reſt, he put one trick upon the Chief of the *Cheraffs* or Bankers at *Brampour*, not to be paſſed over in ſilence.

In regard the ways were bad, and that he had but one pitiful weak Chariot, and four weak Boys, which with the help of Oxen, were hardly ſtrong enough to help him out when he ſtuck in the mire, he ſeldom came to his journeys end till two or three hours after me. Now upon the report that ran of the *French* ſhips being ſeen out at Sea, and the general belief that *Beber* would be one of the Principal Truſtees of the Company, ſeveral, as I ſaid before, courted him, and ſought to engage his Friendſhip. Being arriv'd at *Brampour*, the Chief of the *Cheraffs*, attended by a dozen of his ſervants came to viſit us. Upon the firſt acquaintance *Beber* told him that he wanted a *Pallaquin* to go to *Surat*, whereupon the *Cheraff* civilly offered him his, and caus'd it to be trimm'd up for his better accommodation. *Beber* thought that trimming would have bin finiſht in one day, when indeed it requir'd three or four. The next day I order'd my Coach to be got ready, and order'd my *Pallaquin* to be carri'd away. *Beber*, who verily believ'd that the Company's ſhips were already in the Road of *Surat*, began to curſe and bann the *Cheraff*, who preſently came to him and endeavour'd to appeaſe him with good words. He told him, it could be no prejudice to him to ſtay a day or two; for by that time the Roads would be better, and he might travel the faſter. But *Beber*, being tranſported with paſſion, was ſo far from taking the *Cheraffs* reaſons for ſatisfaction, that ſnatching a Cudgel out of his Waggoners hands that ſtood next to him, he gave the *Cheraff* three or four good Licks croſs the ſhoulders. The Merchants and other people that were in the Inn, were ſtrangely ſurpriz'd at ſuch a piece of rudeneſs, and ran out preſently, ſome with Stones, and others with Cudgels, making a hideous noiſe, and crying out, that they had never ſeen the like. They took it for a moſt enormous Crime, to ſtrike the Chief of the *Cheraffs*, above fourſcore years old, whoſe very age ought to have bin protection enough from ſuch an Affront. Good luck it was for *Beber*, after ſuch a raſh action committed, that I was well known at *Brampour*, having been there ten or twelve times, and in ſome of my Travels having dealt for above 200000 *Roupies*. There were none of the *Cheraffs* with whom I had not dealt by Letters of Exchange, and very few Merchants or Brokers who had not had ſome buſineſs or other upon my accompt. They cry'd out, ſpeaking of me; See there the Monſieur *Franqui*, with whom we have dealt ſo often, yet never heard him give us an ill word. Another good chance he had to meet there the *Coutevall*'s Lieutenant, and three Merchants of *Surat*; and thus between us, having diſingag'd *Beber* out of the Brabble wherein he had ſo ſillily bemir'd himſelf, we made him get into my Coach, and ſo packt him out of the City. I follow'd him two hours after: for had he ſtaid longer in *Brampour*, I believe the *Faquirs* and *Derviches* would have beat out his brains. For he was no ſooner gone, but a great number of that ſort of rabble came to the Inn, crying out, Where was that Dog of a *Cafer* that had beaten the *Cheraff*. Thereupon, ſeeing the Multitude encreaſe, I ſtole out of the Town, without ſaying a word, and rid on till

till I got three leagues from *Brampour*, to an old Town call'd *Badelpoura*, where I overtook *Beber*, who had hir'd a Coach made after the fashion of the Country. It was but reason, that I should have my own Coach to sleep in in the night: For though in all places where you come to lye in the night, the *Indians* will offer you a little bed to lye on, yet in regard the rains were but just over, the bedsteads were so full of Punies, that there was no resting. These Punies are ingender'd by the moisture which the rains, that fall for four months together, cause in those Countries. Which being over, and the Sun recovering its wonted heat, the women carry forth their beds every morning, and beating them well with good big sticks, never leave till the Punies fall to the ground, and there turning up their bellies presently dye. These beds consist of four feet and four round staves, as broad and as long as you please. To the staves are fasten'd girths about four fingers broad, which are much more commodious than the bottoms of our beds that are plank'd with Deal or other wood. Over the girths they only lay a single Coverlet or Sheet, which is a manner of lying easie enough, considering the heat of the Country.

The fourth day after our departure from *Brampour*, being near a great Town call'd *Semqueles*, in a flat Country, we perceiv'd all the Plain cover'd with Tents. It appear'd to be the Camp of one of the chief *Kans*, or Lords, whom the *Great Mogull* had sent with 50000 men against the Rebel *Raja Sevagi*. This Lord, understanding who we were, very civilly sent us Melons, and Mango's, and bid his Officers tell us withal, that we were out of all danger, and might safely pursue our journey. Whatever I could say to *Beber*, to perswade him that it was but an act of civility and good manners, to wait upon the Prince, I could by no means engage him. I seeing his impertinency, shifted my habit, and sent one of my servants to the Camp, to learn whether the *Kan* drank Wine; and understanding that he did, I took a bottle of *Spanish*, and another of *Schirus* Wine, and a small pocket Pistol delicately embellish'd with silver; and with this small Present away I went to wait upon the General. Being come into his Presence, I excus'd *Beber*, as not being well, and immediately presented him the little Pistol, which he took, and bid me charge, being desirous to try it. After he had shot it off, said he to his Lords that stood by, Now must we confess these *Franqui's* to be ingenious. This man sees that I am going to the Wars, and presents me wherewithal to defend my life. Then casting his eyes upon the little Hamper, where the Bottles were, he ask'd what it was? They told him in his Ear. Oh, said he, looking at the same time upon two or three *Mim Bachi's*, or Colonels that were present, This *Franqui* Gentleman has given me a bottle of Wine, well we must drink it; for I find I shall please him in so doing. When the *Mollah's* heard him talk of Wine, they slunk away; which made the *Kan* laugh heartily. These are *Agi's*, quoth he; they have bin Pilgrims to *Mecca*, and never drink Wine after they come home again. Having taken my leave, he sent me a *Pomerè*, which is a kind of Scarf that may also serve for a Girdle. It was made of white Sattin with flow'rs of Gold, and might be worth about a hundred *Roupies*. He that brought it, told me, I should do the *Kan* a great kindness, to send him another bottle of Wine: thereupon I sent him two of three, which was all my store. He sent me six Horsemen to conduct us three days journey, till we had pass'd a great

great River that flows from the Mountains of the South, which waſhing the City of *Baroche*, from whence it takes its Name, falls into the Bay of *Cambay*.

When we came to our laſt ſtage, which is a great Town, call'd *Barnoli*, from whence it is but 14 Leagues to *Surat*, *Beber* ſent one of his Hirelings to give notice thereof to Father *Ambroſe*. When the News came, the Father went with the *Aleppo* Merchant, often already mention'd, to borrow the *Engliſh* Preſident's Coaches: and there were about 15 or 16 more Coaches all in a train, with ſeveral Horſemen and Merchant *Banians* that made haſt to meet the Deputy. This happen'd upon the firſt of *November*, 1666. They carri'd with them Proviſion enough to make merry, and every *Banian* had his Preſent ready. For my part, I as ſoon as I had ſaluted the Father Capuchin, I went directly to my Lodging, where I had left two Servants to take care of a Sum of Money which I had receiv'd of the King of *Perſia*, unwilling to hazard it upon the Road. For in whatever part of the *Indies* I came, I had credit enough to buy without Money. I only gave my Bills for payment at *Agra*, *Viſapour*, *Golconda*, or *Surat*, where I generally left my Money, as having receiv'd it there for the moſt part of the Lords or Kings of the Country.

As for *Beber*, he was no Changeling, the follies that he committed are too numerous to be related: but how he began the year 1667, is not to be omitted.

M. *Thevenot*, upon his return from *Madraſpatan* and *Golconda*, lodg'd in the Capuchins houſe. *Beber* going to viſit him, told him, that the Capuchins were the *Hollanders* Spies, and that he had often advis'd Father *Ambroſe* to break with them, and not to go any more to their Houſe. That while he frequented their Society, the *French* Company would be ſure to find ſome obſtacle in their Trade when the Ships ſhould arrive; and that if the *Hollanders* had not been at *Agra*, they might have done what they pleas'd with the King. That the hundred thouſand *Roupies* which they had preſented to the King and Grandees of the Court, had hinder'd them from obtaining what they deſign'd. By which it appear'd, he underſtood not the humour of the *Hollanders*; for they are not ſo liberal: nor would all their tricks, or preſents have any thing avail'd them, the *Great Mogul* being deſirous that all Nations ſhould be welcome to his Dominions, eſpecially Merchants, as well they that import little, as they that bring in much. M. *Thevenot* told him, that he had never obſerv'd ſo much of the *Hollanders* in all his travels; for if it were true, that they had ſuch a deſire to hinder the Trade of other Nations, they would not afford them paſſage in their Ships, or to put their Goods aboard, as they often did. Moreover, they ſend away many times one or two Ships according to the quantity, laden all with ſtrangers Goods, from *Maſlipatan* or *Surat*, in which Ships, there is not oftimes ſo much as one Bale belonging to the Company. And this, added he, is farther obſervable, That they afford their Freight cheaper then the *Engliſh*, or any other Nation, who have Ships in theſe parts. Thus Monſieur *Thevenot* endeavour'd to convince M. *Beber*; who would have had Father *Ambroſe* have fallen out with the *Hollanders*. But he knew better things then to diſoblige perſons to whom he was ſo much beholding as he was every day. For every week they allow'd the houſe a certain quantity of Bread and Meat, and upon Faſt-days ſent them Fiſh,

Eggs,

Eggs, Brandy, and Wine, which were no ſuch unkindneſſes to be quarrell'd with. Monſieur *Thevenot* at the ſame time told *Beber*, that he ſhould do well to repay Father *Ambroſe* the Money which he had borrow'd to pay for the Coach which he had broken to ſerve him, as alſo that which he had given the Seamen, for trying if they could diſcover the *Companies* Veſſels upon the Coaſt. But he turn'd his deaf ear to that diſcourſe, and would never be perſuaded to reimburſe the Money which Father *Ambroſe* laid out for him. Monſieur *Thevenot* perceiving his unwillingneſs, and preſſing him to do things handſomly, put him into ſuch a chaſe, that he fell a ſwearing after ſuch a violent rate, in a Parlour, that was parted only by a thin board from the place where the Maſs was ſaid, that one of the Fryers, juſt ready to go to the Altar, came forth to deſire him to leave his blaſpheming. But *Beber*'s inſolence took his admonition ſo ill, that he very rudely beat the Fryer in Mr. *Thevenot*'s preſence; ſwearing, That had it not been out of reſpect to him, he would have knockt him o' the head. The Capuchin being ſo injuriouſly us'd, came to Me, being hardly able to ſtir his neck, by reaſon of one of the blows that *Beber* had given him. I chaft his neck with Oyl of Coco's, and wrapt it up warm: but we durſt not ſpeak a word of *Beber*'s idle action, for fear of expoſing our ſelves to the laughter of the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, who would have made good ſport with it. Beſides theſe Enormities, he put away his Servant that had ſav'd his Life, and kept his Wages. After that he went to lye at an Apothecaries houſe, whoſe Name was *Mouillon*, who came from *Goa*, with a good quantity of *Portugal* Wine, and kept a Tavern at *Surat*. While he lay there he had a great Conteſt with the Merchant, who receiv'd the 24000 *Roupies*, which the King had given him for the loſs which he alleadg'd that he and his Chyrurgeon had ſuſtain'd. For the Merchant would acknowledge the receipt of no more then 23900 *Roupies*, the other Hundred being deducted for Fees of the Treaſury. He alſo maintain'd, That the Merchant had receiv'd the 12000 *Roupies* which the King had allow'd him for the loſs of his Blood: but it was known that the Grand Treaſurer would never pay that Money. Thus when he ſaw that his Cheats were diſcover'd to all the World, he began to bethink himſelf how to get away: and we obſerv'd, that he would fain have quitted *Surat* without noiſe. But there is ſuch good Order taken both by Land and Sea, that no perſon can go away without the knowledge and leave of the Governour. For as the Countrymen that come from the other ſide of the water cannot return unleſs they ſhew a mark in their hands made with red Earth at the Cuſtom-houſe; neither Horſe nor Coach can ſtir without a Note from the *Chabander*, and another for the *Radars*, who lye ſometimes two or three Leagues from the Town. *Beber* nevertheleſs had ſome aſſurance from his Vintner, that he might get into a Boat, by bidding the Boatmen carry him to *Reynel*, a large Town on the other ſide of the water. The Maſter of the Boat ask'd him for his Ticket, but *Beber* anſwer'd him with his Cudgel, forcing him forward, and telling him, he was not to demand Billets of ſuch a perſon as he was. As he was got half way the River a great number of Souldiers hollow'd after the Boatmen, to row the Strangers back aſhoar. But *Beber* laid his hand upon his Sword, and compell'd the Boatmen to go forward. That evening, *Beber* being return'd, the poor Boatmen were apprehended, and baſtinado'd till they were almoſt maim'd. The

people

people cri'd out, that it was the *Frangui* that ought to be ſo ſerv'd, and not the poor Watermen, who had done nothing but by conſtraint.

Thus did this Envoy behave himſelf both in *Perſia* and *India*, to the great hindrance of the *French* Nation. Now let us ſee what became of both *Boulaye* and *Beber* after all their Extravagancies.

The *Sieur de la Boulaye*, according to the accompt given by the *Hollanders* that were at *Agra*, left the Town five or ſix days after my departure. Knowing I went to *Surat*, he had plaid his game ſo well with me, that he got a Hamper of twelve large bottles of Wine for 138 *Roupies*, though they coſt me more, for which he gave me a Note of his hand, that I have ſtill in my cuſtody, to be paid at *Surat*, upon the arrival of the *French* Companies ſhips. From thence he travell'd to *Patna*, where he ſtaid nine or ten days, partly with the *Engliſh*, partly with the *Hollanders*: from whence he departed for *Daca*, the Reſidence of the Governour of the Province. The Governour of the Province of *Bengale* was then the *Great Mogul*'s Uncle, whoſe name was *Cha-Eſt-Kan*, a potent Prince, who has always under his Command thirty or forty thouſand men.

At *Patna*, *Boulaye* had a project, that from thence he might eaſily paſs into *China*, and to that purpoſe he there embarqu'd with ſome *Perſian* Souldiers, who were going to liſt themſelves under *Cha-Eſt-Kan*. But after that, to this hour, it never could be certainly known what became of him: but by all probable conjectures, it is verily believ'd, that the *Perſian* Souldiers murder'd him and his little Slave, in hopes of ſome good booty. Of the truth whereof, the Obſervation that follows was no ſmall evidence. About a quarter of a mile from *Daca* lies a Town, where live ſeveral mungrel *Portugal* Officers, belonging to the Governour of *Bengale*, as Canoneers and Carpenters, and ſome of the ſame Nation that ſerve in the Cavalry of *Cha-Eſt-Kan*. There they have alſo a ſmall Church very well built, where an *Auſtin* Fryar officiates, to whom, about three months after *Boulaye*'s departure from *Patna*, a certain *Perſian* in the Habit of a Souldier, with two more companions, brought two large Books, the one in *Folio*, and the other in *Quarto* to ſell. The Fryar, who was a mungrel alſo, underſtood no *Latin*; but finding them not to be in the *Portugal* Language, would have ſtopp'd the Books as ſtoln from the *Hollanders*, had not the Souldier been too ſtrong for him. Theſe Books were thought to have been *Boulaye*'s; who, to my knowledge, had two Cheſts full, well bound; in reading whereof he ſpent the greateſt part of his time. His Avarice was his Ruine; for had he taken a Bark by himſelf, as I did when I went from *Patna*, and had oblig'd the Watermen to give him good ſecurity, he could have run no hazard. For my part I took one with four and twenty men; and every one, knowing I never ſpar'd for coſt, gave me excellent ſecurity. Theſe Barks are little Galliots, which will undertake to carry you to your journey's end, and name your own day. If you will lye aſhoar every evening, they will ſet up your Tents; and ſtop at any Town or City to take in Proviſions. I never made ſo pleaſant a Voyage in my life, nor with leſs trouble. For in theſe Barks, there is a Room where the Sun cannot come in, where you may repoſe in the day time, and ſit in the cool Air on that ſide from whence the Breez comes. There is another place cover'd for your Kitchin; and another little Garderobe for the private deeds of Nature. By the way I kill'd great

ſtore of large Geeſe, Cranes, and Crocodiles, which I gave the Watermen, who were very glad of them; for they ſold them in the Towns as they row'd along. The people in thoſe quarters are very good natur'd and officious. Dyet is little worth, as being the place where you may buy a hundred Pullets for a Crown: and for three or four Pence, you may buy a Fiſh of a prodigious length and bigneſs.

Beber's end was no leſs ſad. For when the *French* Companies Ships were arriv'd, M. *Caron*, who commanded them, and M. *Rambos*, with an *Armenian*, who had the management of the chiefeſt part of the buſineſs, had been acquainted with what had paſs'd at *Surat*, between *Beber* and the Capuchins. Preſently Affections and Intereſts parted. *Caron* and *Rambos* took *Beber*'s part; the *Armenian* held for the Capuchins, which was at length the ruin of *Beber* and *Rambos*. The *Holland* Commander going aboard to viſit the Sieur *Caron*, upon his return would not permit the Captain to ſtir out of his Cabin; ſo that *Rambos* and the *Armenian* took upon them to wait upon the Commander. Upon this Occaſion the *Armenian* took upon him to precede *Rambos*, and briskly threw himſelf before the *French*-man; who being provok'd at the Affront, gave the *Armenian* a ſwinging cuff o' the Ear before all the company. To be ſhort, the Sieur *Caron*, *Rambos*, and *Beber* holding all together, the *Armenian* found himſelf too weak to reſiſt: and in regard he had the Management of the Caſh, he was accus'd of Misbehaviour, and was condemn'd to be hang'd. But becauſe they could not execute the Sentence which they had given at *Surat*, they ſent him away to the Council Royal of the Iſland of *Madagaſcar*, of which M. *Mondevergue* was chief; who was ſo far from confirming the Sentence given at *Surat*, that he admitted the *Armenian* to juſtifie himſelf; and finding that he was not only innocent, but that he might be very uſeful to the Company, he ſent him back to *Surat* with more power then he had before. This put *Beber* and *Rambos* into a fit of Deſpair, to ſee the perſon whom they thought to have ruin'd, now above them. Thereupon they found a way to get 12000 *Roupies* a piece for their Wages, which they pretended to be due from the Company: and with that and 24000 *Roupies* which *Beber* had of his own they Embarqu'd both together for *Goa*. Where, being arriv'd, *Beber* dy'd ſoon after: But as for *Rambos*, he return'd home again through *Iſpahan*.

OBSERVATIONS UPON THE TRADE OF THE EAST-INDIES.

THat Nation which has a deſign to ſettle a Trade in the *Eaſt-Indies*, muſt be ſure in the firſt place, to poſſeſs themſelves of a convenient place in that Country, to carine their Ships, and ſhelter themſelves during the tempeſtuous Seaſons. This want of a good Haven is the reaſon that the *Engliſh* have not made thoſe advantages which otherwiſe they might have done; becauſe it is impoſſible that any Veſſel ſhould remain in thoſe Seas without being carin'd, or elſe eaten by the worms.

Therefore, becauſe it is a long way from *Europe* to the *Eaſt-Indies*, it would be requiſite to have a retreating place at the *Cape of good Hope*, to take in freſh Water and Proviſions, whether going or coming; but eſpecially in their return, in regard that the Ships being then laden, cannot take in Water for any long time.

The Road of the Iſland of *St. Helen*'s, where the *Engliſh* have built a Fort, is a very commodious place: and if the Water be not ſo good upon the North-ſide, yet the Plain is an excellent ſpot of Ground to ſow, with convenience of all things neceſſary for human ſupport.

This advantage the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* have depriv'd all other Nations of, by their Forts upon the *Cape of good Hope*, and *St. Helen*'s. And therefore ſome River's mouth, near the *Cape of good Hope*, ought to be ſought for, for the ſame purpoſe, which would be far more convenient then the *Dauphin Iſland*, where there is no Trade but that of buying Cattel for their Hides; which being a Trade of ſo little conſequence, would ruin a Company to follow it.

The reaſon why I make this Propoſal is, becauſe that in the year 1648, two *Portugal* Veſſels being bound from *Lisbon* to the *Eaſt-Indies*, and reſolving to touch at the *Cape*, to take in freſh Water, miſtook their juſt Depths, ſo that the Sea running high, they fell into a Bay, 18 or 20 Leagues from the *Cape*, upon the Coaſt that looks to the Weſt. In that

Bay they found a River, whoſe Water was very good; and the Blacks of the Country brought them Refreſhments of all ſorts of Fowl, Fiſh, and Bullock's fleſh. There they ſtaid above 15 days, and before they ſet ſail, they took two of the *Negro's*, which they carri'd along with them to *Goa*, to teach them the *Portugueſe* Language, on purpoſe to try if they could diſcover by them any knowledge of the Trade of the Country. The *Dutch* Commander at *Surat* deſir'd me, to inform my ſelf, when I went to *Goa*, what the *Portugals* had learnt from thoſe two *Negro's*. But one *St. Amand*, a *French* Ingeneer, who was Superviſor of the Fortifications of *Goa*, told me, That he could not make them learn one word of the Language; and that he could only gueſs by their ſigns, that they had ſome knowledge of *Ambergreece* and *Elephants Teeth*. The *Portugals* however made no queſtion but to meet with Gold, if they could find a way to trade higher up i' the Country. The Revolutions of *Portugal*, and their Wars with *Spain* have hinder'd them from making any more particular diſcovery of the Coaſt. Which it were to be wiſh'd the *French* would undertake, provided they gave no cauſe of jealouſie to the *Hollanders*, of what they were going about.

There is alſo a neceſſity of poſſeſſing, or at leaſt having the liberty of ſome place near *Surat*, to ride ſafe in, and to waſh and tallow in, in caſe they ſhould be ſtaid by the Rain-Seaſons. The reaſon is, becauſe that during that ill ſeaſon, at what time it is impoſſible to keep the Seas, the *Mogul* jealous of his Fortreſs of *Surat* ſuffers no Foreign Veſſel in the River, where nevertheleſs, the Ships being unladen, may ride ſecurely from the terrible Tempeſts that laſt for five Months.

The only ſecure place for the Companies Veſſels would be the Town of *Dia*, belonging to the *Portugals*.

The advantage of the ſituation is conſiderable for ſeveral reaſons. The circuit of the City contains almoſt 400 Houſes, and might be capable to receive a greater number of people, where the Ships would find all conveniencies during their ſtay. It is ſeated upon the Coaſt of *Guzerat*, upon a point of the Gulph of *Cambaye*, looking toward the South-eaſt. The form of it is almoſt round; and above half the Circle environ'd by the Sea. It is not commanded by any Hill; and the *Portugals* have begun thoſe Fortifications, which might be eaſily finiſh'd. It contains ſeveral Wells of very good Water, and a River which falls into the Sea near the City, whoſe Water is better then that of *Surat*, or *Sonali*, and the Harbour is very commodious for Shipping.

The *Portugals*, when they had firſt ſettl'd themſelves in the *Indies*, kept there a Fleet compos'd of Galleys, Brigantines, and other light Veſſels, whereby they made themſelves Maſters, for a long time, of all the Trade of the Places we have treated of. So that no Ship could trade, without the Governour of *Dia*'s Paſsport, who made it in the Name of the Viceroy that liv'd at *Goa*. The Impoſition, which the Ships paid, was ſufficient to maintain the Fleet and Garriſon, and to enrich the Governour beſides.

When the Rain-Seaſons are over, that the wind ſits at North and North-eaſt, you may ſail from *Dia* to *Surat* in three or four Tides with light Veſſels; but great Ships that are laden muſt fetch a compaſs about the Bank.

The City has no Land belonging to it, but what it ſtands upon, yet it would be no difficult thing to agree with the *Raja*, or Governour of the

the Province, and to obtain as much as ſhould be ſufficient for the Inhabitants.

Neither is the Land about it very fertile, and beſides, the people are the pooreſt in the whole Empire of the *Mogul*. Nevertheleſs the Country is ſo well ſtor'd with Cattel, that an Ox or a *Bufalo* will not coſt above two *Piaſters*.

The *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* make uſe of theſe Cattel to feed their People, and to ſpare the Proviſions of their Ships, while they ſtay at *Soudi*.

But it is obſervable that the *Bufalo*'s fleſh in thoſe parts cauſes frequent Dyſenteries, which the Bullocks fleſh or Beef never does.

The *Raja* that commands the Country has only the Title of Governour for life. Which is common to moſt of the *Raja*'s in the *Mogul*'s Empire, whoſe Anceſtours were Lords of Provinces, where now their Deſcendants only enjoy the Titles of Governours.

Having thus got poſſeſſion of a good Poſt, the next thing of Importance is to chooſe out two men conſiderable for their Honeſty, Prudence, and Skill in Trade, who are to be allow'd the full of their Expences.

Theſe two perſons are to ſerve the Company, the one in the nature of a Preſident, with a Council, conſiſting of a certain number of perſons, to aſſiſt him. The other in the quality of a Broaker, who muſt be an Idolater of the Country, and not a *Mahumetan*, in regard all the Workmen he has to deal with are Idolaters.

Civility and Faith of Promiſe are altogether requiſit to gain Credit among ſtrangers. And theſe particular qualities are requir'd in the particular Broakers, who are under the Broaker-General in the Provinces where the Factories are ſettl'd.

Good Intelligence is neceſſary for theſe two perſons, to underſtand the alteration of Manufactures.

This alteration happens either through the craft and ſubtilty of the Workmen and the Merchants themſelves, or by the correſpondence of the Broakers and Workmen.

Which alteration may cauſe ſo much dammage to the Company, that the Broakers ſhall gain ten and twelve i' the hundred by it.

If the Preſident and Broaker-General combine with the particular Broakers and Merchants, it will be a difficult thing for the Company to avoid being deceiv'd; but if theſe two perſons are but faithful and honeſt, the fraud may be eaſily remedi'd by changing the particular Broakers.

The Officers of a Company may be unfaithful to their Truſt in this reſpect:

When a Veſſel arrives in Port, the Preſident for the Nation receives the Company's Letters, and the Bills of Lading; upon which he calls his Council, ſends for the Broaker, and gives him a Copy of the ſaid Bills.

The Broaker ſhews them to three or four of the principal Merchants of the Country, who are wont to buy by whole ſale. If the Preſident and the Broaker hold together for their own profit, the Broaker inſtead of facilitating the ſale as he ought to do, adviſes the Merchants to be ſhie, and to offer only ſuch a price: Then the Preſident ſends for the Broaker and theſe two or three Merchants, and in the preſence of the Council he asks the Merchants what they will give for the Goods in the Bills of Lading mention'd. If the Merchants are reſolute to give

no

no more then ſo much; The Preſident puts off the ſale 15 days longer, more or leſs, as he pretends himſelf preſs'd to ſell. In the mean time he ſends for the Merchants ſeveral times for a ſhew, and at length, to avoid ſuſpicion, and to diſcharge himſelf, he asks the advice of the Council, and as they approve, orders the delivery of the Goods to the Merchant.

But though the Temptations be very great, to which theſe two Officers are ſubject, by reaſon of their pow'r, their frequent opportunities, and their diſtance from their Superiours, the Company, beſides their being wary in their Election, may remedy theſe diſorders by depriving them of that pretence, which the *Dutch* Commanders and Broakers have, of being conſtrain'd to ſell off preſently to the Merchants in groſs, to avoid the expences of delay.

The Errour which the *Hollanders* commit in this reſpect is, That their Officers beſpeak every year upon Credit all the Goods which they have occaſion for in the Empire of the *Mogul*, according to the Orders which they receive from *Batavia*.

The credit of this Advance coſts them ſometimes twelve, ſometimes fifteen *per Cent.*; ſo that ſo ſoon as their laden Veſſels are arriv'd in the the Port where they are to be ſold, they are oblig'd to ſell them preſently off at the Merchants rate firſt offer'd to their Broakers, to make up a preſent ſtock to pay off their credit for the Goods beſpoke for their Ships to carry back again, and to get more credit for the next year. This is that which cheriſhes that confederacy between the Preſident, the Broaker and the Merchant, who makes advantage enough of this neceſſity of ſelling.

Whereas the better way were, for them that carry the ſame Commodities which the *Hollanders* do, to carry Money alſo to pay the Workmen for the Goods beſpoken for the next year.

The Company making this advantage ſhall not be put to pay that great Intereſt of 12 and 15 *per Cent.*: and beſides, they ſhall have better Goods, and better cheap. The Ships loading ſhall be ready before they arrive in Port; and being quick laden they may return before the bad Seaſon. Neither ſhall the Company be put to ſell their Goods at a low price; becauſe their Broakers will have time to ſtay for the coming of Merchants from other parts; or elſe becauſe they have time enough to ſend them to other places, where they are ſure of a quicker ſale.

Obſerve alſo, That it is far more profitable to carry to the *Indies* Gold and Silver in Ingots, rather then ready coin'd; for being coin'd the Money is valu'd only according to their Alloys; and there is always a defalcation made for the charge of Coinage.

The Broaker alſo, if he be diſhoneſt, may combine with the Maſter of the *Mogul*'s Mint, which is ſettl'd in ſeveral parts of the Empire, and put a lower value upon the Gold and Silver then it deſerves, by telling the Preſident and Council, that upon the touch it appears to be no more worth.

But it is an eaſie thing to avoid this deceit, provided the Preſident be a perſon of credit and prudence, by ſending for one of the Refiners of Gold and Silver, that live in the Country, who perfectly underſtand the Touch of Metals, and to let him Eſſay the Gold and Silver before the Broaker's face.

This is that which the Sieur *Walkenton* did for the *Holland* Company

in

in their Factory at *Caſambazar*, where he bought every year ſix or ſeven thouſand Bales of Silk. For by this Eſſay he found, that his Broaker being in confederacy with the Maſter of the Mint, had cheated the Company of one and a half and two *per Cent.* in the value of the Gold and Silver which was brought him from *Japan*, as well coin'd as in barr, to a very conſiderable ſum of Money.

The Broaker alſo may confederate with the Maſter of the Mint to cozen the Merchant in weghing his Gold or Silver, by making uſe of falſe Weights or Scales unduly pois'd.

But that fraud is eaſily avoided, if the Preſident and his Council will be but ſo patient as to ſee their Metal weigh'd themſelves, and take care that the Weights be right, and the Scales true.

One of the moſt important Obſervations in reference to the Trade of the Company, and diſcipline of their Factories is this:

To prevent the Merchants or under-Merchants, Accomptants and under-Accomptants, who officiate under the Commanders and Broakers, from driving any particular Trade by themſelves, for they having a familiarity with the men of Manufacture, and finding by the Letters of Advice what Goods are likely to be moſt vendible next year, buy them up upon their own accompts, and find a way to lade them off in the Company's Veſſels, to the great dammage of the whole, though to the great gain of particular people.

And this the Preſident permits them to do, either for his own Intereſt, or by connivance under the pretence of their ſmall Wages. The Captain of the Veſſel alſo winks at what they do, becauſe he has a ſpell for loading and unloading. And becauſe theſe people having no great Stocks, are deſirous to put off their Goods with the firſt opportunities, they give order to their Correſpondents to under-ſell the Company ten or twelve in the Hundred, which is the abſolute ruin of a Trade.

To remedy this diſorder there ought to be a Fiſcal, or King's Proctor, in every of the chief Factories belonging to the Company, to act in the King's Name, and by his Authority.

He is to be independent from the Preſident and the Broaker, in the Exerciſe of his Office; ſo that he may have an eye, as well upon their behaviour, as upon the demeanour of the under Officers.

He ought to be a perſon of good Credit, reſolute and vigilant; and he muſt have a ſtrength of men correſpondent to his Employment, and a Deputy to act under him.

He is to have good Information of the departure of all Ships when they are once laden, and when they are ready to ſet ſail for the Port whither they are bound. When he hears of the Arrival of any Ship, he ought to go himſelf, or ſend his Deputy with a ſufficient Guard, to take an Accompt of the Ship's Lading.

If it be a place near to which there are any ſmall Iſlands, or by-Nooks, it behoves him to take care that no Goods be privately convey'd aſhoar in thoſe private corners, where there are receivers a now ready: and whatever he finds thus privately unladen he ſhall have power to confiſcate.

He ſhall alſo confiſcate whatever he finds not Mark'd with the Company's Mark.

He may alſo diſcharge any inferiour Officers to whom any ſuch Bales

ſhall

ſhall belong; and for the ſuperiour Officers, he ſhall complain of them to the Company.

He ſhall have pow'r to open all private Letters, to inform himſelf of Prohibited Goods, and Private Correſpondencies.

This Prohibition of Private Trading cannot be too ſeverely impos'd, and it is obſerv'd with ſo much exactneſs in *Holland*, that when one of the Company's Ships is ready to ſet ſail from *Amſterdam*, a Burgomaſter gives the Captain and all the reſt of the Seamen their Oaths, that they ſhall be contented with their Wages, and meddle with nothing of Trade.

All the Officers of the Factory ſhould be advanc'd by degrees, ſo that a ſub-Accomptant may have hopes to be a Preſident; that the hopes of Advancement may oblige them to live with more credit, and cauſe them to ſtudy to make themſelves more capable of all the Intrigues and Subtilties of the Trade of the Country.

It is of great importance not to ſhew any favour in this particular of preferment, unleſs he have paſs'd through all particular Degrees and Offices beforehand. And thus much concerning the Diſcipline of the Factories.

O F

OF THE

COMMODITIES

WHICH ARE

Brought as well out of the Dominions of the GREAT MOGUL, *as out of the Kingdoms of* Golconda *and* Viſapour, *and other neighbouring Territories; And alſo of the* Weights *and* Prices *of the ſaid* Commodities.

Of their Silk.

Kaſembaſar, a Village in the Kingdom of *Bengala*, ſends abroad every year two and twenty-thouſand Bales of Silk; every Bale weighing a hunder'd pound. The two and twenty Bales make two millions and two-hunder'd-thouſand pound, at ſixteen ounces to the pound. The *Hollanders* uſually carry away ſix or ſeven-thouſand Bales, and would carry away more, did not the Merchants of *Tartary*, and the *Mogul*'s Empire oppoſe them: for they buy up as much as the *Hollander*; the reſt the Natives keep to make their Stuffs. This Silk is alſo brought into the Kingdom of *Guzerat*, the greateſt part whereof comes to *Amadabat*, and to *Surat*, where it is wrought up.

In the firſt place they make Carpets of Silk and Gold, others of Silk and Silver, others all of Silk: for the Worſted Carpets are made at *Vettapour*, ſome twelve leagues from *Agra*.

In the ſecond place they make Satins with ſtreaks of Gold and Silver; others plain: with Taffata's after the ſame faſhion.

In the third place they make *Patoles*, which are a ſort of Silk-ſtuff very thin, but painted with all ſorts of Flowers, the manufacture whereof is at *Amadabat*. They coſt from eight *Roupies* to forty the piece. This is a Commodity wherein the *Dutch* will not ſuffer any one of the *Hollanders* to trade in particular: for they tranſport it to the *Philippine-Iſlands*, to the Iſlands of *Borneo*, *Java*, *Sumatra*, and other neighbouring Iſlands.

The raw-Silk of *Kaſembaſar* is yellowiſh, as are all the raw-Silks that come from *Perſia* and *Sicily*; but the Natives of *Kaſembaſar* have a way to whiten it, with a Lye made of the aſhes of a Tree which they call *Adam*'s Fig-tree; which makes it as white as the *Paleſtine*-Silk. The *Hollanders* ſend away all their Merchandize which they fetch out of *Ben-*

gala, by water, through a great Canal that runs from *Kaſembaſar* into *Ganges*, for fifteen leagues together; from whence it is as far by water down the *Ganges* to *Ouguely*, where they lade their Ships.

Of the Calicuts: and firſt of the painted Calicuts, call'd Chites.

Chites or Painted Calicuts, which they call *Calmendar*, that is to ſay, done with a Pencil, are made in the Kingdom of *Golconda*; and particularly about *Maſlipatan*. But there is made ſo little, that though a man ſhould employ all the Workmen that underſtand the Art of weaving Calicuts, he would hardly find enough to make three Bales.

The *Chites* which are made in the Empire of the Great *Mogul* are all printed; and nothing ſo beautiful, neither for the figures nor the fineneſs of the Linnen. Thoſe which are made at *Lahor*, are the coarſeſt, and conſequently the cheapeſt of all. They are ſold by *Corges*, every *Corge* conſiſting of twenty pieces, which coſt from 16 to 30 *Roupies*.

The *Chites* which are made at *Seronge*, are ſold from 20 to 50 *Roupies* the *Corge*, or thereabouts.

Theſe *Chites* ſerve for Coverlets for Beds, for Sofra's or Table-cloaths after the Country-faſhion, Pillowbears, Handkerchiefs, but more eſpecially for Waſtcoats as well for the men as women in *Perſia*.

The fine Calicut-*Chites* are made at *Brampour*; and are us'd for Handkerchiefs by thoſe that ſnuff Tobacco.

The women alſo, over all *Aſia*, make Veils of theſe Calicuts, to wear over their heads, and about their ſhoulders, which Veils are call'd *Ormis*.

The *Baſta's* or Calicuts painted red, blue, and black, are carri'd white to *Agra*, and *Amadabat*, in regard thoſe Cities are neareſt to the places where the *Indigo* is made that is us'd in colouring. They coſt from two *Roupies* to 30 or 40 a-piece, according to the fineneſs and the quantity of Gold at the ends, and ſometimes upon the ſides. The *Indians* have a way to dip ſome of theſe Calicuts in a certain water that makes them look like Water'd-Chamlets, which adds alſo to the price.

That ſort which is ſold for two *Roupies*, and ſo onward till ye come to twelve, is tranſported to the Coaſt of *Melinda*, and it is the greateſt Trade the Governour of *Moſambique* drives, who ſells them to the *Cafres*, that vend them again among the *Abyſſins*, and into the Kingdom of *Saba*: for thoſe people not underſtanding the uſe of Soap, need no more but only to waſh theſe Calicuts in water. That ſort which is valu'd from 12 *Roupies* upward, is tranſported to the *Philippine*-Iſlands, the Iſlands of *Borneo*, *Java*, *Sumatra*, and other adjacent places. Where the women wear no other clothes, then a ſingle piece of this Calicut. One part whereof, without cutting it, ſerves for a Petticoat; the other they wind about their ſtomachs and their heads.

White Calicuts.

WHite Calicuts come partly from *Agra*, and about *Lahor*, part from *Bengala*: ſome from *Brouda*, *Baroche*, *Renonſari*, and other places. They are brought out of the Loom to *Renonſari*, and *Baroche*, where they are whiten'd by reaſon of the convenience of their Meadows, and the great ſtore of Limons that grow thereabouts. For the Calicuts are never ſo white as they ſhould be, till they are dipt in Limon-water.

The

The Calicuts that come from *Agra*, *Lahor*, and *Bengala*, are ſold by the *Corge*, and they are of ſeveral prices, from ſeventeen *Roupies* to three or four-hunder'd, as the Merchant will have them wov'n.

The Calicuts that come from *Renonſari*, and *Baroche*, are one and twenty cubits long, new out of the Loom; but in the whitening they ſhrink to twenty cubits.

Thoſe of *Brouda* twenty cubits from the Loom, and ſhrink in the whitening to nineteen and a half.

All the Calicuts or *Baſta's* that come from theſe three Cities, are of two ſorts: for ſome are broad, ſome are narrow. The narrow are thoſe I have already mention'd, the prices whereof are various, from two *Mamoudi's* to ſix.

The broad *Baſta's* are a cubit, and one third part wide; the whole piece twenty cubits long. The uſual price of them is from five *Mamoudi's* to twelve: but a Merchant being upon the place, may cauſe them to be made much more large and fine, till they are worth five-hundred *Mamoudi's* a-piece. I ſaw two pieces ſold for a thouſand *Mamoudi's*.

The *Engliſh* bought one, and the *Hollanders* another, each Piece containing eight and twenty cubits.

Mahamed Alibeg returning into *Perſia* out of *India*, where he had been Embaſſador, preſented *Cha-Sef* the ſecond with a Coco-nut, about the bigneſs of an Auſtrich-egg, all beſet with Pearls: and when 'twas open'd there was taken out of it a Turbant that had ſixty cubits of Calicut in length to make it, the Cloath being ſo fine, that you could hardly feel it in your hand: For they will ſpin their thread ſo fine, that the eye can hardly diſcern it, or at leaſt it ſeems to be but a Cob-web.

Twiſted-Cotton.

COtton twiſted and untwiſted comes from the Provinces of *Brampour* and *Guzerat*. Untwiſted Cotton is never tranſported into *Europe*, being too cumberſome, and of little value; only they ſend it to *Ormus*, *Balſara*, and ſometimes to the *Philippine*-Iſlands, and the Iſlands of *Sinde*. As for the twiſted Cottons, the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* tranſport a good quantity, not of the fineſt, but of that ſort which is pric'd from fifteen to fifty *Mamoudi's*: It ſerves for wieks for Candles, for Packſaddles, and for the ground of Silk-ſtuffs.

Indigo.

INdigo comes from ſeveral parts of the Great *Mogul*'s Empire; and according to the diverſity of the places it differs in quality, and conſequently in price.

In the firſt place, it comes from the Territories of *Biana*, *Indoua*, and *Corſa*, a day or two's journey from *Agra*; which is eſteem'd the beſt of all. It is made alſo eight days journey from *Surat*, in a Village called *Sarqueſs*, two leagues diſtance from *Amadabat*. Here the flat *Indigo* is made. There is alſo *Indigo* little inferior in goodneſs and price, which comes from the King of *Golconda*'s Territories. The *Mein* of *Surat*, which contains 42 *Serre's*, or 34 and a half of our pounds, is valu'd from 15 to 20 *Roupies*. They make as good as this at *Baroche*. That which is made up about *Agra* is made up in half Balls, and is the moſt ſought for in all *India*.

It is ſold by the *Mein*, which in thoſe places contains 60 *Serres*, or 51 and three quarters of our pounds. The uſual price is from 36 to 40 *Roupies*. There grows alſo *Indigo* ſome 36 leagues from *Brampour*, about a great Village call'd *Raout*, and round about the neighbouring Towns in the road to *Surat*: Of which the Natives uſually make above a hunder'd-thouſand *Roupies*.

There comes *Indigo* alſo from *Bengala*, which the *Holland*-Company tranſports for *Maſlipatan*. But they buy this *Indigo*, and that of *Brampour* and *Amadabat*, cheaper by 24 in the hunder'd, then that of *Agra*.

Indigo is made of an Herb which they ſow every year after the rains are over: which when it is grown up, is very like our Hemp. They cut it three times a year; firſt when it is about two or three foot high; and they cut it within half a foot of the ground; the firſt cutting far exceeds the two latter. The ſecond cutting is worſe then the firſt by ten or twelve in the hunder'd. And the third worſe then the ſecond by 12 in the hunder'd. The difference is found by breaking a piece of the Paſte, and obſerving the colour. The colour of that *Indigo* which is made of the firſt cutting, is a Violet-blue, but more brisk and lively than the two others: and that which is made of the ſecond is more lively then the third.

When they have cut the Herb, they throw it into Pits which they make with Lime, which becomes ſo hard, that you would judg it to be one intire piece of Marble. They are generally fourſcore or a hunder'd paces in circuit; and being half full of water, they fill them quite up with the Herb. Then they bruiſe and jumble it in the water till the leaf, for the ſtalk is worth nothing, becomes like a kind of thick mud. This being done, they let it ſettle for ſome days; and when the ſetling is all at the bottom, and the water clear above, they let out all the water. When the water is all drain'd out, they fill ſeveral baskets with this ſlime, and in a plain Field you ſhall ſee ſeveral men at work, every one at his own basket, making up little pieces of *Indigo* flat at the bottom, at the top ſharp like an egg. Though at *Amadabat* they make their pieces quite flat like a ſmall cake. Here you are to take particular notice, that the Merchants, becauſe they would not pay cuſtom for an unneceſſary weight, before they tranſport their *Indigo* out of *Aſia* into *Europe*, are very careful to cauſe it to be ſifted, to ſeparate the duſt from it; which they ſell afterwards to the Natives of the Countrey to dye their Calicuts. They that ſift this *Indigo* muſt be careful to keep a Linnen-cloath before their faces, and that their noſtrils be well-ſtopt, leaving only two little holes for their eyes. Beſides, they muſt every half hour be ſure to drink milk, which is a great preſervative againſt the piercing quality of the duſt. Yet notwithſtanding all this caution, they that have ſifted *Indigo* for nine or ten days, ſhall ſpit nothing but blew for a good while together. Once I laid an Egg in the morning among the ſifters, and when I came to break it in the evening it was all blew within.

As they take the Paſte out of the Baskets with their Fingers dipt in Oil, and make it into Lumps, or Cakes, they lay them in the Sun to dry. Which is the reaſon that when the Merchants buy *Indigo*, they burn ſome pieces of it, to try whether there be any duſt among it. For the Natives who take the Paſte out of the Baskets to make it into Lumps, lay it in the Sand, which mixes with the Paſte, and fouls it. But when the Merchants burn it, the *Indigo* turns to Aſhes, and the Sand remains. The Governours do what they can to make the Natives leave their

Knavery;

Knavery; but notwithſtanding all their care, there will be ſome deceit.

Salt-Peter.

GReat ſtore of *Salt-Peter* comes from *Agra* and *Patna*; but the refin'd coſts three times more then that which is not. The *Hollanders* have ſet up a Ware-Houſe fourteen Leagues above *Patna*, and when their *Salt-Peter* is refin'd, they tranſport it by water by *Ogueli*. A Mein of refin'd *Salt-Peter* is worth ſeven Mamoudi's.

Spice.

CArdamom, Ginger, Pepper, Nutmegs, Nutmeg-Flowers, Cloves and Cinnamon, are all the different ſorts of Spices known to us. I put Cardamom and Ginger in the firſt place, becauſe that Cardamom grows in the Territories of *Viſapour*, and Ginger in the Dominions of the Great *Mogul*. And as for other Spices, they are brought from other Foreign parts to *Surat*, which is the grand Mart.

Cardamom is the moſt excellent of all other Spices, but it is very ſcarce; and in regard there is no great ſtore in the place where it grows, it is only made uſe of in *Aſia*, at the Tables of great Princes. Five hundred pound of Cardamoms, are pric'd from a hundred to a hundred and ten Rials.

Ginger is brought in great quantities from *Amadabat*, where there grows more than in any other part of *Aſia*; and it is hardly to be imagin'd how much there is tranſported candited into Foreign parts.

Pepper is of two ſorts. There is a ſort which is very ſmall, another ſort much bigger; both which ſorts are diſtinguiſh'd into ſmall and great Pepper. The larger ſort comes from the Coaſt of *Malavare*; and *Tuticorin* and *Calicut* are the Cities where it is brought up. Some of this Pepper comes from the Territories of the King of *Viſapour*, being vended at *Rejapour*, a little City in that Kingdom. The *Hollanders* that purchaſe it of the *Malavares*, do not give Money for it, but ſeveral ſorts of Commodities in Exchange; as Cotten, Opium, Vermilion, and Quickſilver; and this is the Pepper which is brought into *Europe*. As for the little Pepper that comes from *Bantam*, *Aſchen*, and ſome other parts toward the Eaſt, there is none of it carried out of *Aſia*, where it is ſpent in vaſt quantities, eſpecially among the *Mahumetans*. For there are double the Grains of ſmall Pepper in one pound, to what there are of the great Pepper; beſides that the great Pepper is hotter in the mouth.

The little Pepper that comes to *Surat*, has been ſold ſome years for thirteen or fourteen Mamoudi's the Mein; and ſo much I have ſeen the *Engliſh* give for it, to tranſport it to *Ormus*, *Balſara*, and the Red Sea. As for the great Pepper, which the *Hollanders* fetch from the Coaſt of *Malavare*, five hundred pound in truck brings them in not above thirty-eight Reals; but by the Commodities which they give in Barter, they gain *Cent. per Cent.*

The Nutmeg, the Nutmeg-Flow'r, the Clove, and Cinnamon, are the only Spices which the *Hollanders* have in their own hands. The three firſt come from the *Molucca* Iſlands; the fourth, which is Cinnamon, from the Iſland of *Ceylan*.

'Tis

'Tis obſervable of the Nutmeg, that the Tree which bears it is never planted, which has been confirm'd to me by ſeveral perſons that have liv'd ſeveral years in the Country. They related to me, that the Nutmeg being ripe, ſeveral Birds come from the Iſlands toward the South, and devour it whole, but are forc'd to throw it up again before it be digeſted. The Nutmeg then beſmear'd with a viſcous matter, falling to the ground takes root, and produces a Tree, which would never thrive were it planted. This puts me in mind of making one obſervation upon the Birds of Paradiſe. Theſe Birds being very greedy after Nutmegs, come in flights to gorge themſelves with the pleaſing Spice, at the ſeaſon, like Felfares in Vintage time; but the ſtrength of the Nutmeg ſo intoxicates them, that they fall dead drunk to the Earth, where the Emets in a ſhort time eat off their Legs. Hence it comes, that the Birds of Paradiſe are ſaid to have no Feet; which is not true however, for I have ſeen three or four that had Feet; and a *French* Merchant ſent one from *Aleppo* as a Preſent to *Lewis* the Thirteenth that had Feet; of which the King made great account, as being a very lovely Fowl.

But notwithſtanding all the *Hollanders* Projects, you may buy Cloves at *Macaſſar* without purchaſing them of the *Hollander*; in regard the Iſlanders buy them of the *Dutch* Captains and Soldiers, which the *Hollanders* have in thoſe places where the Cloves grow, giving them in exchange Rice, and other neceſſaries for the ſupport of life, without which they would ſtarve, being very ſadly provided for.

When the Natives of *Macaſſar* are thus furniſh'd of Cloves, they barter them in Exchange for ſuch Commodities as are brought them; ſometimes they give Tortoiſe-Shells in exchange, and Gold Duſt; by which the Merchant gains ſix or ſeven in the hundred, being better than the Money of the Iſland, though it be Gold, by reaſon the King oftimes enhances the value of it. The places where Cloves grow, are *Amboyna*, *Ellias*, *Seram*, and *Bouro*.

The Iſlands of *Banda* alſo, in number ſix, *viz. Nero*, *Lontour*, *Poulcay*, *Roſeguin*, and *Grenapuis*, bear Nutmegs in great abundance. The Iſland of *Grenapuis* is about ſix Leagues in compaſs, and ends in a ſharp point, where there is a continual fire burning out of the earth. The Iſland *Damme*, where there grows great ſtore of Nutmegs, and very big, was diſcover'd in the year 1647, by *Abel Taſman*, a *Dutch* Commander.

The Price of Cloves and Nutmegs, as I have known them ſold to the *Hollanders* at *Surat*, was as follows.

The Mein of *Surat* contains forty Serres, which make thirty-four of our Pounds, at ſixteen Ounces to the Pound.

A Mein of Cloves was ſold for a hundred and three Mamoudi's and a half.

A Mein of Mace was ſold for a hundred and fifty-ſeven Mamoudi's and a half.

Nutmegs for fifty-ſix Mamoudi's and a half.

Cinnamon comes at preſent from the Iſland of *Ceylan*. The Tree that bears it is very much like the Willow, and has three Barks. They never take off but the firſt and ſecond, which is accounted the beſt. They never meddle with the third, for ſhould the Knife enter that, the Tree would dye. So that it is an art to take off the Cinnamon, which they learn from their youth. The Cinnamon Spice is much dearer to the *Hollanders* then people think; for the King of *Ceylan*, otherwiſe call'd

King

King of *Candy*, from the name of his principal City, being a ſworn Enemy to the *Hollanders*, ſends his Forces with an intention to ſurprize them, when they gather their Cinnamon; ſo that they are forc'd to bring ſeven or eight hundred men together to defend as many more that are at work. Which great expence of theirs very much enhances the price of the Cinnamon. There grows upon the Cinnamon Tree a certain fruit like an Olive, though not to be eaten. This the *Portugals* were wont to put into a Caldron of Water, together with the tops of the Branches, and boil'd it till the Water was all conſum'd. When it was cold, the upper part became a Paſte like white Wax; of which they made Tapers to ſet up in their Churches, for no ſooner were the Tapers lighted, but all the Church was perfum'd. Formerly the *Portugals* brought Cinnamon out of other Countries, belonging to the *Raja's* about *Cochin*. But the *Hollanders* have deſtroy'd all thoſe places, ſo that the Cinnamon is now in their hands. When the *Portugals* had that Coaſt, the *Engliſh* bought their Cinnamon of them, and uſually paid for it by the Mein fifty Mamoudi's.

Drugs that are brought to Surat, *and brought from other Countries, with the price of every one by the Mein.*

Salt Armoniack, according to the uſual price, coſts by the Mein twenty Mamoudi's.

Borax, comes unrefin'd from *Amadabat*, as does Salt Armoniack, and coſts by the Mein thirty-five Mamoudi's.

Gum-Lack, ſeven Mamoudi's and a half.

Gum-Lack waſh'd, ten Mamoudi's.

Gum-Lack in ſticks of Wax, forty Mamoudi's.

There are ſome of theſe Sticks that coſt fifty or ſixty Mamoudi's the Mein, and more when they mix Musk in the Gum.

Saffron of *Surat*, which is good for nothing but for colouring, four Mamoudi's and a half.

Cumin White, eight Mamoudi's.

Cumin Black, three Mamoudi's.

Arlet ſmall, three Mamoudi's.

Frankincenſe, that comes from the Coaſt of *Arabia*, three Mamoudi's.

Myrrh, that which is good, call'd *Mirra Gilet*, thirty Mamoudi's.

Myrrh *Bolti*, which comes from *Arabia*, fifteen Mamoudi's.

Caſſia, two Mamoudi's.

Sugar Candy, eighteen Mamoudi's.

Aſutinat, a ſort of Grain, very hot, one Mamoudi.

Anniſe-ſeed groſs, three Mamoudi's and a half.

Anniſe-ſeed ſmall and hot, one Mamoudi and a half.

Oupelote, a Root, fourteen Mamoudi's.

Cointre, five Mamoudi's.

Auzerout, from *Perſia*, a hundred and twenty Mamoudi's.

Alloes Succotrine, from *Arabia*, twenty eight Mamoudi's.

Licorice, four Mamoudi's.

Lignum Aloes, in great pieces, two hundred Mamoudi's.

Lignum Aloes, in ſmall pieces, four hundred Mamoudi's.

Vez-Cabouli, a certain Root, twelve Mamoudi's.

There is a ſort of Lignum Aloes very Gummy, which comes to, by the Mein, four thouſand Mamoudi's.

Gum-

Gum-Lake for the moſt part comes from *Pegu*; yet there is ſome alſo brought from *Bengala*, where it is very dear, by reaſon the Natives fetch that lively Scarlet colour out of it, with which they paint their Calicuts. Nevertheleſs, the *Hollanders* buy it, and carry it into *Perſia* for the ſame uſe of painting. That which remains after the colour is drawn off, is only fit to make ſealing Wax. That which comes from *Pegu* is not ſo dear, though as good for other Countries. The difference is only this, that it is not ſo clean in *Pegu*, where the Piſmires foul it, as in *Bengala*, where it grows in a heathy place, full of Shrubs, where thoſe Animals cannot ſo well come at it. The Inhabitants of *Pegu* never make any uſe of it in painting, being a dull ſort of people, that are in nothing at all induſtrious.

The Women of *Surat* get their livings by cleanſing the Lake after the Scarlet colour is drawn from it. After that they give it what colour they pleaſe, and make it up into Sticks for ſealing Wax. The *Engliſh* and *Holland* Company carry away every year a hundred and fifty Cheſts. The price is about ten Pence the pound.

Powder'd Sugar is brought in great quantities out of the Kingdom of *Bengala*; it cauſes alſo a very great Trade at *Ougeli*, *Patna*, *Daca*, and other places. I have been told it for a very great certainty, by ſeveral ancient people in *Bengala*, that Sugar being kept thirty years becomes abſolute poiſon, and that there is no Venom more dangerous, or that ſooner works its effect. Loaf-Sugar is alſo made at *Amadabat*, where they are perfectly skill'd in refining it; for which reaſon it is call'd Sugar Royal. Theſe Sugar-Loaves uſually weigh from eight to ten pound.

Opium is brought from *Brampour*, a Town of good Trade between *Agra* and *Surat*. The *Hollanders* buy great quantities, which they truck for their Pepper.

Tobacco alſo grows in abundance round about *Brampour*; ſometimes there has been ſo much that the Natives have let vaſt quantities rot upon the ground, for want of gathering.

Coffee grows neither in *Perſia* nor in *India*, where it is in no requeſt; but the *Hollanders* drive a great Trade in it, tranſporting it from *Ormus* into *Perſia*, as far as Great *Tartary*, from *Balſara* into *Chaldea*, *Arabia*, *Meſopotamia*, and the other Provinces of *Turky*. It was firſt found out by a Hermite, whoſe name was *Sheck-Siadeli*, about twenty years ago, before which time it was never heard of in any Author either ancient or modern.

Deceits in Silk Wares.

PLain Silk Wares may be alter'd in length, breadth, and quality. The quality ſhews it ſelf when they are of an even thread, when the weight is equal, and when there is no Cotton thread in the Weft.

The *Indians* not having the art of gilding ſilver, put into their ſtrip'd Wares threads of pure Gold, ſo that you muſt count the quantity of Gold threads to ſee whether the Silk have its due number. And this alſo you muſt obſerve in your Silks wov'n with Silver. As for Taffata's, you are only to mind whether the pieces be all of a fineneſs, and to ſee by unfolding ſome of them, that there be nothing within to augment the weight, and then weighing all the pieces by themſelves, to ſee that they all agree.

The

The colours of thoſe Carpets which are made in *India*, do not laſt ſo long as the colour of thoſe which are made in *Perſia*; but for the workmanſhip it is very lovely. The eye of the Broaker is to judge of the largeneſs, beauty, and fineneſs of thoſe Carpets which are wrought with Gold and Silver, and whether they be fine and rich. But whether they be Carpets, or other Stuffs mix'd with Gold and Silver, it behoves the Buyer to pull out ſome of the Gold and Silver Threads, to ſee whether they be of the right value or no.

Deceits in the White Calicuts.

THe deceits uſually put upon Calicuts, are in fineneſs, length, and breadth. Every Bale may contain two hundred pieces; among which they will juggle in five or ſix or ten, leſs fine, or leſs white, ſhorter or narrower than according to the ſcantling of the Bale, which cannot be found out but by examining them piece by piece. The fineneſs is diſcern'd by the eye, the length and breadth by the meaſure. But the *Indians* practiſe a more cunning way, which is to count the number of threads which ought to be in the breadth, according to the fineneſs of the ſcantling. When the number fails, it is either more tranſparent, more narrow, or more courſe. The difference is ſometimes ſo difficult to be perceiv'd, that there is no way to find it out but by counting the threads. And yet this difference in a great quantity comes to a great deal. For it is nothing to couſen a Crown or two Crowns in a piece that comes but to fifteen or twenty Crowns. Thoſe that whiten theſe Calicuts, to ſave charges of a few Limons, will knock the Calicuts exceſſively upon a Stone, which does fine Calicuts a great injury, and lowers the price.

As for their Calicuts dy'd blew or black, you muſt take care that the Workmen do not knock them after they are folded, to make them look ſleek; for many times when they come to be unfolded, you ſhall find holes in the creaſes.

As for your painted and printed Calicuts, which are painted and printed as they come out of the Loom, the Merchant muſt take care that what he beſpeaks be finiſh'd before the end of the Rains, for the thicker the Water is where they are waſh'd, the more lively will the printed and painted colours appear. It is eaſie to diſtinguiſh between the printed and the painted Calicuts; and between the neatneſs of the work: but for the fineneſs and other qualities, they are not ſo eaſily diſcern'd; and therefore the Broaker muſt be more careful.

Cheats in Cotton.

THe cheat in the weight is twofold. The firſt, by laying them in a moiſt place; and thruſting in the middle of every Skain ſomething to add to the weight. The ſecond, in not giving good weight when the Broaker receives it from the Workman, or Merchant that delivers it.

There is but one cheat in the quality, that is by putting three or four Skains, of a coarſer Commodity then that which is uppermoſt, into one *Mein*. Which in a great quantity mounts high; for there are ſome Cottons that are worth an hunder'd Crowns the *Mein*. Theſe two cheats

being often us'd by the *Holland*-Company, there is no way but to weigh your Commodity in the preſence of the *Dutch*-Commander, and his Councel, and to examin every *Mein* Skain by Skain. When this is done, they who are order'd to be at his examination, are oblig'd to fix to every Bale a ticket of the weight and quality: for if there be a faileur, they who fix the ticket are engag'd to make good what is wanting.

Deceits in Indigo.

I Have told you, that when the Work-men have made up the Indigo-Paſte into lumps, with their fingers dipt in Oil, they lay them in the Sun a drying. Now thoſe that have a deſign to cheat the Merchants, dry them in the ſand, to the end that the ſand ſticking to the Indigo, ſhould encreaſe the weight. Sometimes they lay up their Paſte in moiſt places, which makes it give, and conſequently renders it more heavy. But if the Governour of the place diſcovers the cheat, he makes them ſeverely pay for it: and the beſt way of diſcovery is to burn ſome pieces of Indigo, for the ſand will remain.

Indian Broakers.

THe Broakers are as it were the Maſters of the *Indian* Families; for they have all Goods at their diſpoſal. The Work-men chooſe the moſt aged and moſt experienc'd, who are to endeavour equal advantages for the whole Tribe they undertake for. Every evening that they return from their buſineſs, and that, according to the cuſtom of the *Indians*, who make no Suppers, they have eaten ſome little piece of ſweet-meat, and drank a glaſs of water, the eldeſt of the Tribe meet at the Broaker's Houſe, who gives them an account of what he has done that day, and then they conſult what he is to do next. Above all things, they caution him to look to his hits, and to cheat, rather then be cheated.

F I N I S.

CATALOGUS LIBRORUM.

FOLIO.

CAtalogus Impreſſorum Librorum Bibliothecæ *Bodleianæ* in Academia *Oxonienſi* per *Tho. Hide. Oxonii è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*, 1674.

Charletoni (Gualteri) M. D. Exercitationes de Differentiis & nominibus Animalium, quibus accedunt Mantiſſa Anatomica & quædam de variis Foſſilium Generibus, deque Differentijs & nominibus Colorum. *(Figuris) Oxoniæ è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*, 1677.

Ferrarij (Jo. Bap.) Lexicon Geographicum, Vol. 2. Cum Additionibus *Ant. Baudrand. Iſenaci* 1677.

Hiſtoria & Antiquitates Univerſitatis *Oxonienſis*, Vol. 2. *Oxoniæ è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*. 1674.

Jamblicus (Chalcidenſis) de Myſterijs *Ægyptiorum*, G. L. Interprete & notis *Thomæ Galei* T. C. C. S. *Oxonij è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*. 1678.

Marmora *Oxonienſia* ex *Arundelianis*, *Seldenianis*, aliiſque conflata; cum Comment. *Humphredi Prideaux*, *Seldeni* & *Lydiati* annotationibus. *Oxonij è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*. 1676.

Theatri *Oxonienſis* Encœnia, ſive Comitia philologica, Jul. 6. Ann. 1677. Celebrata.

Ælfredi magni *Anglorum* Regis Vita, à Dom. *Johanne Spelman* conſcripta, & annotationibus illuſtrata, *Oxonij è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*. 1678.

Dr. *Henry Hammond*'s Sermons. 1675.

A Table of Ten Thouſand ſquare Numbers, by *John Pell*, D. D. 1672.

The Commentaries and Life of *Julius Cæſar*, with the Notes of *Clemens Edmonds*. 1677.

Pocock's (Edw.) Commentary on *Micha* and *Malachi*. *Oxf.* at the Theater. 1677.

Tavernier (Jo. Bapt.) Travels through *Turkey* into *Perſia*, and the *Eaſt-Indies*, (with Cuts) *Lond.* 1677.

Charas (Moſes) Royal Pharmacopœia Galenical and Chymical. *Lond.* 1678.

Webſter (John) Diſplaying of ſuppoſed Witchcraft. 1677.

The Natural Hiſtory of *Oxford-ſhire*, being an Eſſay towards the Natural Hiſtory of *England*, by *R. Plot*, L. L. D.

Hugo. Grotij opera Theologica, Vol. 4. 1679.

Epiſcopij opera, 1678.

An *Engliſh* Bible in *Folio*, now in the Preſs at the Theater in *Oxford*.

Judge *Hales* Origination of Mankind, 1677.

QUARTO.

HIſtoria *Jacobitarum* in *Ægypto*, *Lybia*, *Nubia*, *Æthiopia* tota, & parte *Cypri* inſulæ habitantium, per *Joſ. Abudacnum*, *Oxonij è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*.

Votum pro Pace Chriſtiana, Aut. *Andr. Sall*, D. D. *Oxonij è* Theatro *Sheldoniano*, 1678.

Lightfoot (Jo.) horæ Hebraicæ & Talmudicæ in Corinthios. *Pariſiis* 1677.

Joannis Bonæ (Cardinalis) Opera Theol. 1677.

Binchii (M. Joan.) Mellificium Theologicum. *Amſt.* 1666.

Seldenus (Jo.) de Nummis. *Londini* 1675.

Mercurialis (Hier.) de Arte Gymnaſtica, (cum Figuris.) *Amſt.* 1672.

Moſes Maimonides de Jure Pauperis & Peregrini apud Judæos. Heb. cum Notis *Humph. Prideaux Oxon*, 1679.

Herrocci

Horroccii (Jer.) opera Aſtronomica, nec non *Walliſii* Exercitationes tres. 1678.
Paladius de Gentibus Indicis & Bragmanibus G. L. *Londini* 1665.
Ferrarij (Alex.) Euclides Catholicus. *Londini* 1676.
Teſtamentum Græcum. *Genevæ.*
Duporti Gnomologia Homerica. 1660.
Bonham's (Joſua) Sermon at the Viſitation held at *Leiceſter, April* 29. 1674.
Sermon Preached before the *Artillery-Company*, by *William Durham.*
Les Motifs de la Converſion à la Religion Reformée Du *Francois de le Motte.* A *Londres*, 1675.
Pharmacopée Royale, Galenique et Chymique, par *Moyſe Charas. Pariſ.* 1676.
An *Engliſh* Bible, with the Liturgy, Apocrypha, and Singing Pſalms. *Oxford* at the Theater, 1675. and in ſmall 4°, 1679.
Cook (John) Sermon before the Mayor, *Decemb.* 19. 1675. on *John* 8. 34. 1676.
Luzancy's Abjuration-Sermon at the *Savoy, July* 11. 1675. on *John* 8. 32. 1676.
Pell (John) Introduction to Algebra. 1668.
Senault (Jo. Fr.) Chriſtian Man. 1650.
A Sermon at the Marſhal *Turenne's* Funeral, *Decemb.* 15. 1675. 2 *Sam.* 3. 32. 1677.
Tillotſon's (Jo.) Sermon before the King, *April* 18. 1675. *Pſal.* 119. 60. 1675.
Twiſden's (Sir *Roger)* Hiſtorical Vindication of the Church of *England.* 1675.
Wilkins (Jo.) Sermon before the King, *March* 7. 1669. on *Prov.* 13. 16, 17. 1674.
Sermon before the King, *March* 19. 1670. on *Eccleſiaſtes* 12. 14. 1671.
Cole (Gilbert) Conferences againſt the Church of *Rome. Oxford*, at the Theater, 1674.
Alleſtrey's (R.) Divine Authority of Scripture, a Sermon, 2 Tim. 3. 15. 1673.
Character of the Laſt Day, a Sermon before the King, 2 Pet. 3. 3. by *John Fell* Lord Biſhop of *Oxford.* 1675.
Clarendon (Edward Earl) Survey of *Hobs's Leviathan. Oxford*, at the Theater, 1676.

OCTAVO.

TEſtament *Engliſh* for Children: Printed at the Theater, *Oxon.* 1679.
Homeri Ilias Græcé Cum Scholiis *Didymi. Oxonii è* Theatro *Sheldoniano.*
Archimedes Arenarius cum notis *Jo. Wallis. Oxoniæ è* Theatro *Sheldoniano.* 1676.
Oughtred (Guil.) Opuſcula hactenus inedita notis *Jo. Walleſii. Oxonii è* Theatro *Sheldoniano.* 1677.
Eugalenus (Seres) de Scorbuto. *Hagæ-Com.* 1658.
Grammar *Engliſh* and *French*, by the Meſſieurs of the *Port Royal.* 1674.
Lydiati Canones Chronologici. *Oxonii è* Theatro *Sheldoniano.* 1675.
Mayern (Theod. Torq.) de Arthritide. *Lond.* 1676.
Gregory's Nomenclator. 1675.
Needham (Gualt.) De Formato Foetu. *Londini*, 1667.
Parei (David) Chronologia Sacra. *Amſt.* 1641.
Ruarii, Grotii, &c. Epiſtolæ. *Amſt.* 1677.
Rhetores Selecti. Gr. Lat. per *Tho. Gale. Oxonii è* Theatro *Sheldoniano.* 1676.
Pſalterium Græcum juxta M. S. Alexandrin. cum verſione vulgata. *Oxonii è* Theatro *Sheldoniano.* 1678.
Sandii (Chr.) Interpretationes Paradoxæ Quatuor Evangel. *Coſmop.* 1670.
——— Hiſtoriæ Eccleſiaſtæ. *Coſmop.* 1669.
Smith (Tho.) De Eccleſiæ Græcæ Hodierno Statu Epiſtola. *Londini* 1678.
Theocratus cum Scholiis Græcis, *è* Theatro *Sheldoniano.*
Georgii Diaconi Epitome Logices Ariſtotelis *Oxonii.*
Art of Speaking, *London*, 1676.
Boyl (Rob.) againſt *Tho. Hobs. Lond.* 1674.
——— Of Effluviums. *Lond.* 1673.
——— Of Gems. *Lond.* 1672.
Barbets (Paul.) Chirurgery (with Cuts.) *Lond.* 1675.
Barnets (Gilb.) Myſtery of Iniquity. *Lond.* 1676.
Baſilius Valentinus of Natural and Supernatural things. *Lond.* 1670.
Fourneil's Diſcourſe, with the General Syſteme of the *Carteſian* Philoſophy. *Lond.* 1670.

F I N I S.